Kentico CMS 6.0 Community Site Guide



Table of Contents

Introduction	6
About this guide	6
Community features	6
Part 1	9
Getting started	
Installing the site	
First sight	
User registration and Sign-in	15
Current functionality	
Modifying the registration form	
Modifying user profiles	
Enabling public profile fields visibility controls	27
Registration approval and double opt-in	
Windows Live ID	
Overview	
Adding the sign in button	
Groups	
Current functionality	
Creating a new group	
Modifying the group public profile	
Modifying templates for group pages	
Forums	
Current functionality	
Modifying the forums structure	
Biogs	
Current functionality	
Media libraries	
Current functionality	66
Creating custom media libraries	
Publishing more than one global media library	
Design and styles	80
Changing the header image	80
Modifying the stylesheet	
Part 2	88

Introduction	88
Pre-development tasks	91
Creating the site	
Assigning the CSS stylesheet	
Creating page templates category	
Defining web part containers	
Uploading images	102

2

3

Creating a sample poll Creating the tag groups Creating the News notification template	
Creating a sample Media library	
Creating the Master page	114 117
Creating the Search page	125
Creating the Logon page	130
Creating the Home page	136
Creating a starter page template	145
Creating the Blogs section	150
Creating the Blogs page	150
Creating the Create page	
Creating the Blog list page	
Creating the Blog posts page	
Creating the News page	170
Creating the Media page	174
Creating the Forums section	177
Creating the Forums page	
Creating the Forum search page	
Creating the Groups section	185
Creating the Groups page	
Creating the Create page	
Creating the Management page	
Creating the Access page	
Creating groups starter template	
Creating the Profile page	202
Creating the Members page	208
Creating the Media list page	
Creating the Media page	216
Creating the Forums page	220
Preparing the Group pages section	
Creating the Template page	
Creating the Pages page	
Creating the Group pages title page	
Creating the members section	
Creating the Members page	
Creating the Online page	
Creating the Profile page	
Creating the Members management starter template	
Creating the Invitations name	
Greating the Messages page	205 کے
Greating the Friends name	
Creating the Manage friends page	
Creating the Special page	204 268
Creating the Special pages tolder	
Greating the Plag unsubseries near	
Greating the Board unsubscribe page	213 270
or cating the board discussions page	

Creating the Forum unsubscribe page	
Creating the Friend management page	287
Creating the Invitation acceptation page	291
Creating the Registration approval page	295
Ordering pages in the content tree	299
Making the settings	299



Introduction

1 Introduction

1.1 About this guide

Welcome to **Kentico CMS Community Guide**. This guide will provide you assistance with building online communities using Kentico CMS.

Kentico CMS comes with the sample **Community Starter site**. This sample website template can be conveniently used as a starting point of your own community site development. In the first part of this guide, we will go through the various customization tasks that need to be done if you want to develop your community site based on this template. The second part will describe building community sites from scratch.



1.2 Community features

Community sites are such websites that bring the possibility of on-line interconnection of people, usually those who share the same interests or who are members of some real-world group and have the need to meet on-line. For the purposes of the community, such site should provide the possibility of gathering in groups, discussing in forums, blogging, advanced membership with the possibility of friendship between users, customized user profiles, various sign-in possibilities, etc.

Introduction	7

Kentico CMS is a full-featured solution for building complex community sites without any complex programming. Here is a list of the most important built-in community features of Kentico CMS:

- Community Groups
- Forums
- Blogs
- User profiles
- Badges
- Friends
- Bad words
- Abuse report
- Polls
- Content rating
- Time zones

All the implementation processes have been diminished to only a few clicks, so that you can use most of the features out-of-the-box.





2 Part 1

2.1 Getting started

2.1.1 Installing the site

To get started, you need to have the sample Community Site installed. There are two ways how this can be achieved:

1. If you are performing a new installation, you can choose the site in the **Starter Site** step of the **Database Setup** (the number of the step may vary). Select the **Choose starter site** radio-button and choose the **Community Site** from the list of starter sites. Click **Next** to finish the setup procedure.



2. If you already have Kentico CMS installed, but without the Community Site, you can easily add the site in **Site Manager -> Sites**.

a) Click the **New site wizard** link at the top left corner of the page.



b) In Step 1, choose Use website template and click Next.

Step 1 Choose default website If you choose to create a blank site, the wizard will guide you through the process of creating a new site. If you choose to use a template, you will be able to choose one of the predefined website templates.	
 Create a new site using a wizard Use website template 	
	Next >

c) In Step 2, choose Community Site form the list of available website templates and click Next.

11

Step 2	noose website template oose the predefined website template that will be used for your new website. The website template may ntain site structure, design, basic content, new document types and other settings.
- Carlos - C	
	Personal Site This is a web template for a sample Personal site. Several Kentico CMS features, such as blogs, forums and photo galleries, are included. It can be used as a cornerstone for the custom personal site development. The template uses the portal engine and it is the recommended choice for developers who are new to Kentico CMS.
	Community Site This is a web site template for a sample community site. Social networking features of Kentico CMS are used on the site to give you an idea of how they can be used on your web site. You can also modify this web site and use it as a base for the development of your own site. It uses the portal engine and is recommended for developers who are new to Kentico CMS.
	Intranet Portal This is a ready-to-use website template for a sample intranet portal site. The site showcases many features useful for a company intranet, such as sub-sections dedicated to departments or workgroups and document or project management. You may use it as a base for your own company intranet by replacing the sample data with your own. It uses the portal engine and may be used by developers who are new to Kentico CMS.
	Blank Site This template is intended for developers who want to create a new web site from scratch. It uses the portal engine.
	< Previous Next >

d) In Step 3, specify the display name, code name and domain name of your site and click Next.

Step 3	Enter new site settings Enter the display name and code name of the website. The Domain field must contain the dor use to access the website during development (you may change it when the site goes live). Th is the main language of the website.	nain that you will he default culture
Site display name: Site code name: Domain name:	Community site CommunitySite localhost	
	<	Previous Next >

Step 4 Objects sele Please select o	ction ojects which should be imported.	
 All objects Website Documents 	Please select the object type from the tree if you wish to change the default selection. Click Next to start the import of selected objects. Global selection	•
 Tools Administration Settings Gevelopment 	Load default selection Select all objects Select only new objects Deselect all objects Import settings	_
 ✓ J Global objects ▷ 4 Tools ▷ 1 Administration 	 ✓ Assign all objects to the imported site (recommended) ✓ Run the site after import 	
Development 🖬 Development	 Delete incomplete site when import fails Do not import objects where parent object is missing Import tasks (recommended) 	ш
	 ✓ Import files (recommended) ✓ Import global folders □ Import assembly files 	
	Import site folders Log staging synchronization tasks Log integration tasks	
		Ŧ
	< Previous Next >	

e) In Step 4, leave the settings at their default values and click Next.

f) Wait until the end of site import process, you will be redirected to the following step of the wizard.

Part 1	13
--------	----

Step 5 Import progress Objects are being imported.			
Importing 'Page templates' objects Importing 'Page layouts' objects Importing 'Page layouts' objects Importing 'Resource strings' objects Importing 'Ul cultures' objects Importing 'SS stylesheets' objects Importing 'Settings' categories' objects			
Objects are being imported	< Previous	Cancel	Next >

g) In the last step, you can click the **Edit your new website** link to go to **CMS Desk**, where you can start editing the site immediately.

Step 6 The website has been created successfully Now you can view and edit your new website.	
<u>Edit your new website</u> If this is your first website, the default user account is administrator without password.	
	Finish

You can also click the **Finish** button to go back to **Site Manager -> Sites**, where the site should be listed with the name specified in Step 3.

Sites		
A New site wizard S Import si	te or objects 📑 Export objects	
- Actions	Site name 🔺	Status
2 🗙 🕅 💽 Þ 🔳 🌚	Community site	Running

2.1.2 First sight

When you have the Community Site installed and running, why not go to the live site and see it in action. To see all the features working, sign in using the **Sign in** form at the top of the right side column. Use e.g. user name **David** with blank password. Once signed-in, you should see the site as in the screenshot below:



1. At the very top of the page, you can see the **CMS Desk** and **CMS Site Manager** links. These can be used to access the administration interface from the live site. Default user name is *administrator* with blank password. Alternatively, the administration interface can be accessed via the following URLs: *<site domain>/CMSDesk* or *<site domain>/CMSSiteManager*.

2. Links to the current **user's public profile**, **profile editing**, **internal messaging inbox** and the **Sign out** link that can be used to log off the site.

3. Main menu. The menu reflects site structure, particular items in the menu lead to the following sections:

- Home home page of the website, displaying latest blog and forum posts in the main area and various other information in the side column
- **Blogs** in this section, you can read blog posts in site users' blogs or easily create your own blog right on the live site and start blogging immediately
- News the news section is designed for displaying news items created by authorized CMS Desk users, typically site administrators and editors
- Media in this section, you can view content of the site's public media libraries; various types of files can be stored in these libraries, while large file sizes (several GB) are supported
- Forums discussion forums, you can read or join discussions on various topics and create new topics; both classical and Q-A forum types are supported
- **Groups** in this section, you can view existing community groups and join some of them or even create your own new group; groups can have their own media libraries, forums, polls and message boards
- **Members** this is where you can see a complete list of site members; by right clicking their avatars, you can display a context menu allowing you to do several actions related to the clicked user; by left-clicking a user's avatar, you can view the user's public profile
- Examples in this section, you can find isolated examples of particular community web parts; these examples are particularly useful when you access them from CMS Desk, where you can view web part properties settings

4. This is the main zone where the **content** is displayed. On the Home page, it displays the Sign-in/Join banner and extracts from the latest blog and forum posts.

5. Integrated **full-text search** of all documents on the site.

6. The shortcuts box displays **shortcuts to various community functions**. It offers different actions depending on which section of the site is currently displayed.

7. The rest of the side column displays various repeaters and information boxes depending on which section of the site is currently displayed.

2.2 User registration and Sign-in

2.2.1 Current functionality

In the following example, you will learn how to register to the site and become its member.

1. If you come to the site as a site visitor and want to register, there are several links to click. All of the links highlighted in the screenshot below will take you to the **Logon page** where registration can be performed. Click one of them.



2. On the logon page, site visitors can register by filling in the **Join the community** form. Enter some sample details and click **Register**.

								Sign In
Commu	inity er site					H A		_
Home Blogs	News Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
Sign in			_		J	oin the comm	nunity	
User name	2:				ι	lser name:	Derek	
Password	:				F	irst name:	Derek	
	Remember me				ı	ast name:	McKenzie	
					E	mail:	ckenzie@localhost.local	
Faraattaa					F	assword:	••••	
Forgotten	password				c	Confirm password:	••••	
					c	ender:	Male Female	
							Register	

3. You will be redirected to your public profile. This profile is visible to all site visitors and users and gives them an overview about yourself. Let's modify your details a bit now. Click the **Edit my profile** link in the **Shortcuts** menu. You will be redirected to the profile editing page.



4. Let's choose some avatar so that your profile looks more personal. Click the **Select pre-defined avatar** link as highlighted in the screenshot below.

				Curr	rent user: Derek	McKenzie (Derek)	My home pa	<u>ge Edit my profile Inbox Sign out</u>
Commun	nity site							
Home Blogs Ne	ws Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
My profile								
								Shortcuts
Personal settings Change	ge password No	tifications						<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
Username:	Derek							My messages
Full name:	Derek McKenzi	e						My friends My invitations
Email:	mckenzie@loca	alhost.local						Create a new group
Display my e-mail to:	Nobody (a)	ll) 💿 Site memb	ers 🔘 Friends					<u>Create a new blog</u> Sign out
Nickname:	Derek							
	2 olon			*				My blogs
								You currently do not have any
Signature:								blogs.
				~				Mu groups
Messaging notification e-mai	1:							You are currently not member
Time zone:	(none)			•				of any group.
Avatar:	Upload:		Bro	wse				
	Select pre-defined	avatar						Forum favorites
Gender:	Male	le						No favorites found
Date of birth:		® <u>Now</u>						
	OK							

5. The gallery of pre-defined avatars will be displayed. Choose one and click OK.



6. Let's also add your date of birth. Click the calendar icon next to the **Date of birth** field, pick a date and click **OK**.

7. Finally, click **OK** on the profile editing page to save the changes. If you click the **My profile** link in the **Shortcuts** menu again, you will see your profile with the avatar and date of birth added.



Further steps: This was only a brief example of what can be done. Try playing around with the settings and explore the various possibilities. You can for example use an image from your local disk instead of the pre-defined avatars. You can also go to the **Members** section, where profiles of all sample site users can be accessed from. Notice that the **Shortcuts** menu displays various actions depending on what content is currently displayed. Performing the actions is very intuitive, so don't be afraid and try them out.

2.2.2 Modifying the registration form

In the following example, you will learn how to modify the registration form used on the logon page. For the purpose of this example, we will want the **Middle name** field to be specified by users on registration.

The registration form is displayed using the **Custom registration form** web part. This web part enables user registration based on an **alternative form** of the **CMS_User** system table. For more information about the Alternative forms concept, please refer to the <u>Module Alternative forms</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Sign in to **Site Manager** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Go to **Development -> System tables** and choose to **Edit** (\checkmark) the **User** (CMS_User) system table.

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development Tools	Dashboard Licenses Support	<u>CMS Desk</u> User: ⊥ Global Administrator Buy		
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures 	Tables View	n tables s Stored procedures				
Custom settings	- Actions	Class display name 🔺	Class name	Table name		
Custom tables	/ -	Contact management - Account	OM.Account	OM_Account		
Socument types	/ -	Contact management - Contact	OM.Contact	OM_Contact		
📰 Inline controls	1 -	Ecommerce - Bundle	ecommerce.bundle	COM_Bundle		
🛃 Modules	/ -	Ecommerce - Customer	ecommerce.customer	COM_Customer		
Notifications	/ -	Ecommerce - Order	ecommerce.order	COM_Order		
Page templates	1 -	Ecommerce - Order item	ecommerce.orderitem	COM_OrderItem		
🖷 Relationship names	/ -	Ecommerce - Shopping cart	ecommerce.shoppingcart	COM_ShoppingCart		
Search engines	1 -	Ecommerce - Shopping cart item	ecommerce.shoppingcartitem	COM_ShoppingCartSKU		
Tag groups	1 -	Ecommerce - SKU	ecommerce.sku	COM_SKU		
🚷 Time zones	1 -	Group	Community.Group	Community_Group		
I UI cultures	1 -	Media file	media.file	Media_File		
Web part containers	1 -	Newsletter - Subscriber	newsletter.subscriber	Newsletter_Subscriber		
Web templates		User	cms.user	CMS_User		
Widgets	1 -	User - Settings	cms.usersettings	CMS_UserSettings		
Workflows						

2. Switch to the Alternative forms tab. Choose to Edit (*V*) the Registration form alternative form, which is the one currently used on the logon page. As you can see, the other alternative forms are used for user profile displaying and editing.

V Kentico				<u>CMS Desk</u>				
Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development Too	s Dashboard Licenses Su	oport Buy				
 Development 	Svster	tables						
Countries								
🎻 CSS stylesheets	Tables Views	Tables Views Stored procedures						
Cultures	> System tables	System tables > Liser						
🦑 Custom settings								
ij Custom tables	Fields Querie	Fields Queries Alternative forms Search fields On-line marketing						
🗊 Document types	Create new form							
I Form controls								
📰 Inline controls	- Actions	Display name	Code name					
遇 Modules	* Actions	Display name 🔺	Coue name					
😹 Notifications	2 🗶 🔻 🗸	Display profile	DisplayProfile					
Page layouts	1 🗙 🛪 📼	Display profile (Corporate Sit	e) DisplayProfileCorporateSite					
📑 Page templates	AX -	Display profile (Intranet)	DisplayProfileIntranet					
🖷 Relationship names		Editorafila	EditDrofilo					
🛃 Search engines		Eait prome	EditProfile					
System tables	/ 🗶 🔻 🔻	Edit profile (Community)	EditProfileCommunity					
Tag groups	/× -	Edit profile (Intranet)	EditProfileIntranet					
Time zones	Fdit profile (MyDesk) FditProfileMyDesk							
I cultures								
Web part containers		Registration form	RegistrationForm					
🛷 Web parts	4							
Web templates								

3. Switch to the Fields tab. This is where you can define which fields of the User system table will be displayed in the form. Select the MiddleName field from the list on the left, check the Display attribute in the editing form check-box and specify the following details:

20

- Field caption: Middle name
- Form control type: Input
- Form control: Text box

Click 🖬 Save field.

Kentico			<u>CMS Desk</u>	User: 👤 Global Administrator
Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development	Tools Dashboard Licenses	Support Buy	
 Development 	System tables			
Countries				
🍯 CSS stylesheets	Tables Views Stored procedures			
Cultures	> System tables > User			
🖑 Custom settings				
Custom tables	Fields Queries Alternative forms Se	arch fields On-line marketing		
Document types	> <u>Alternative forms</u> > Registration form			
4 Form controls	General Fields Layout			
Inline controls				
Modules	UserID*	🔚 <u>Save field</u>		
Notifications	FirstName			
Page layouts Page templates	MiddleName LastName	Database		
Relationship names	FullName*	O aluma annai	NOT THE RE	
Search engines	Email UserPassword*	Column name:	MiddleName	
System tables	PreferredCultureCode	Attribute type:	Text	v
	UserEnabled*	Attribute size:	100	
Time zones	UserIsEditor*	Allow empty value:		
🗑 UI cultures	UserisExternal	Default value:		
Web part containers	UserPasswordFormat			
🛷 Web parts	LastLogon	Display attribute in the edit	ing form	
Web templates	UserStartingAliasPath	Field appearance		
Widgets	UserLastModified*	Default visibility:	Display to none	•
Workflows	UserLastLogonInfo UserIsHidden	Visibility control:	Visibility (drop down list)	-
	UserVisibility UserIsDomain	Allow user to change field		
	UserHasAllowedCultures -	Field contion:	Middle Name	
		Field caption.		
		Form control type:	Input	
		Form control:	Text box	
		Field description:		*

4. Switch to the **Layout** tab. This is where you can define the layout of the form. Right-click the line with the FirstName controls. From the context menu, choose **Row** -> **Insert row after**. Select **MiddleName** from the **Available fields** list and use the **Insert label**, **Insert input** and **Insert validation label** buttons below to insert the label, input and validation controls into the new table row. The result should look as in the following screenshot.

Click Save.



5. If you go to the live site now and open the **Logon page**, you should see the modified version of the alternative form, just as in the screenshot below.



Sign III	
User name:	User name:
Password:	First name:
Remember me	Middle name:
Log on	Last name:
notten password	Email:
	Password:
	Confirm password:
	Gender: O Male O Female
	Register

Further steps: You have learned how to modify the registration alternative form. The same way, you can add other fields to the form according to your needs. You may also try creating a completely new alternative form and using it for registration. The new alternative form needs to be specified in the **Alternative form** property of the **Custom registration form** web part. You can find a step-by-step tutorial on how to do this in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Membership and User registration -> Creating a custom registration form</u>.

2.2.3 Modifying user profiles

You can define which information will be displayed on users' public profiles. In the following example, you will learn how to add the User ID field to the public profiles.

User public profiles display information from the **CMS_User** system table using an alternative form. In our case, it is the **Display profile** alternative form. We will have to modify the alternative form to achieve the required functionality. For more information about the Alternative forms concept, please refer to the <u>Modules -> Alternative forms</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Sign in to **Site Manager** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Go to **Development -> System tables** and choose to **Edit** (\checkmark) the **User** (CMS_User) system table.

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development Tools	Dashboard Licenses Support	<u>CMS Desk</u> User: ⊥ Global Administrator Buy
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures Custom settings Custom tables 	Tables View	n tables s Stored procedures Class display name A Contact management - Account	Class name OM.Account	Table name OM_Account
 Document types Form controls Form controls Modules Notifications Page layouts Page templates Relationship names Search engines System tables Tag groups Time zones Ut cultures Web parts Web templates 		Contact management - Contact Ecommerce - Bundle Ecommerce - Customer Ecommerce - Order	OM.Contact ecommerce.bundle ecommerce.customer ecommerce.order	OM_Contact COM_Bundle COM_Customer COM_Order
		Ecommerce - Order item Ecommerce - Shopping cart Ecommerce - Shopping cart item Ecommerce - SKU	ecommerce.orderitem ecommerce.shoppingcart ecommerce.shoppingcartitem ecommerce.sku	COM_OrderItem COM_ShoppingCart COM_ShoppingCartSKU COM_SKU
		Group Media file Newsletter - Subscriber User	Community.Group media.file newsletter.subscriber cms.user	Community_Group Media_File Newsletter_Subscriber CMS_User
 Widgets Workflows 	1 -	User - Settings	cms.usersettings	CMS_UserSettings

2. Switch to the Alternative forms tab and choose to Edit (*P*) the Display profile alternative form.

Ne Kentico								CMS Desk
Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy	
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures Custom settings Custom tables Document types 	System Tables View System tables Fields Querie Greate new fr	s Stored procedures s Stored procedures s Vuser es Alternative forms form	Search field	s On-line m	arketing			
 Form controls Inline controls Modules 	- Actions	Display name 🔺		Code name				
R Notifications	- X	Display profile		DisplayProfi	le			
Page layouts	× ×-	Display profile (Corpor	ate Site)	DisplayProfi	leCorporate	Site		
Page templates	/× -	Display profile (Intrane	t)	DisplayProfi	leIntranet			
Relationship names Search engines	/× -	Edit profile		EditProfile				
System tables	2 🗙 👻	Edit profile (Community	y)	EditProfileC	ommunity			
Tag groups	1 🗙 🖛	Edit profile (Intranet)		EditProfileIn	tranet			
🚷 Time zones 🍘 UI cultures	/× -	Edit profile (MyDesk)		EditProfileM	yDesk			
Web part containers	/ 🗙 🔻	Registration form RegistrationForm						
🛷 Web parts	•							
Web templates								

3. Switch to the **Fields** tab. Select the **UserID** field from the list on the right and check the **Display** attribute in the editing form check-box. Click **a** Save field to confirm the changes.

Kentico Site Manager Sites Ar	Administration Settings Development To	ools Dashboard Licenses	<u>CMS Desk</u> Support Buy	User: 1 Global Administrator
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets CLltures Custom settings Custom tables Document types Form controls Modules Notifications Page layouts Page templates Search engines System tables Tag groups Time zones UI cultures Web parts Web parts Web templates Workflows 	System tables Tables Views Stored procedures System tables Views Stored procedures System tables Views Stored procedures Alternative forms Searce Alternative forms > Display profile General Fields Layout UserName* FirstName HiddleName LastName FullName Email UserPassword* UserEation* UserSection* UserSection* UserCreated LastLogon UserCreated LastLogon UserLastModified* UserLastModified* UserLastModified* UserLastModified* UserHasAllowedCultures	th fields On-line marketing	UserID Integer number Display to all Visibility (drop down list) UserID Viewer Label	

4. Now we need to modify the layout of the profile, so switch to the **Layout** tab. Place the cursor in the first column of the empty line below the FullName line and choose **UserID** from the **Available fields** list on the right.

Click the **Insert label** button. Select the text that was entered and make it bold so that it looks the same as the other labels. Place the cursor to the second column of the line and click the **Insert input** button.

The result should look as in the screenshot below. Finally, click **Save** to save the changes.

26



5. Now if you switch to the live site and sign in as some of the sample users (e.g. *David* with blank password), you should see the UserID field present on their profile, as highlighted in the screenshot below.



Further steps: You have learned how to modify the user public profile. This way, you can add any other field to the profile. You may also try creating your own alternative form and use it for displaying user profiles. The new alternative form needs to be specified in the **Form name** property of the **User public profile** web part. You may also try modifying the **Edit profile (Community)** alternative form the same way. Like this, you can allow users to modify some additional details of their profile on the profile editing page.

2.2.4 Enabling public profile fields visibility controls

You can let users specify who will see particular details on their public profiles. By default, this is enabled for the e-mail field, as you can see in the screenshot below. Using the highlighted radio-buttons, users can make their e-mail address visible to:

- Nobody nobody can see the e-mail address
- All everyone including anonymous site visitors can see the e-mail address
- Site members only authenticated site users can see the e-mail address
- Friends only authenticated site users who are among the user's friends can see the e-mail address



In the following example, you will learn how to let users set the visibility of their full name.

User profiles display data stored in the **CMS_User** system table based on the specified alternative form. In our case, it is the **Edit profile (Community)** alternative form. We will have to modify it to achieve the required functionality. For more information about the Alternative forms concept, please refer to the <u>Module Alternative forms</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Sign in to **Site Manager** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Go to **Development -> System tables** and choose to **Edit** (\checkmark) the **User** (CMS_User) system table.

Kentico Site Manager Sites Administ	tration Settings Development Tools D	Dashboard Licenses Support	<u>CMS Desk</u> User: 1 Global Administrator Buy
Sites Administ Development Countries Countries Countries CSS stylesheets Table Cuttures Custom settings Custom tables Document types Form controls Inline controls Notifications Page layouts Page templates Relationship names Search engines System tables Tag groups Time zones U1 cultures V Web part containers V	Views Stored procedures Views Stored procedures Contact management - Account Contact management - Account Contact management - Contact Contact management - Contact Ecommerce - Bundle Ecommerce - Order Ecommerce - Order item Ecommerce - Shopping cart Ecommerce - Shopping cart Ecommerce - Skup Group Media file Newsletter - Subscriber	Dashboard Licenses Support Class name	Buy Buy Buy Contact COM_Contact COM_Contact COM_Customer COM_Customer COM_Ordertem COM_Ordertem COM_ShoppingCartSKU COM_ShoppingCartSKU Community_Group Media_File Newsletter_Subscriber
Web templates Widgets Workflows	▼ User ▼ User - Settings	cms.user cms.usersettings	CMS_User CMS_UserSettings

2. Switch to the Alternative forms tab and choose to Edit (\checkmark) the Edit profile (Community) alternative form.

Kentico				CMS Des											
Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development Tool	s Dashboard Licenses	Support Buy											
✓ Development	System	tables													
Countries															
CSS stylesheets	Tables Views	s Stored procedures													
Cultures	> System tables	System tables > User													
Custom settings		Fields Quarias Alternative forms Coareb fields On line marketing													
Custom tables	Fields Querie	Heids Queries Alternative forms Search fields Un-line marketing													
Document types	Create new f	E Create new form													
Form controls															
Inline controls	- Actions	✓ Actions Display name ▲ Code name													
Modules		Disalau asafila	Disalau Desfile												
Notifications		Display profile	DisplayProfile												
Page layouts	2 🗙 🔻	Display profile (Corporate Site	e) DisplayProfileCorporateS	te											
Page templates	/×-	Display profile (Intranet)	DisplayProfileIntranet												
Relationship names		Edit profile	EditProfile												
Search engines															
System tables		Edit profile (Community)	EditProfileCommunity												
Tag groups	2 🗙 👻	Edit profile (Intranet)	EditProfileIntranet												
Time zones	/× -	Edit profile (MyDesk)	EditProfileMyDesk												
		Registration form	RegistrationForm												
web part containers		Registration form	Negioraroni oni												
web parts	•														
Web templates	1														

3. Switch to the **Fields** tab and select **FullName** from the list on the left. Check the **Allow user to change field visibility** check box and switch the value of the **Visibility control** drop-down list to **Visibility (radio buttons - horizontal)**. Click **a Save field** to confirm the changes.

Kentico			CMS Desk	User: 👤 Global Administrator										
Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development	Tools Dashboard Licenses	Support Buy											
 Development 	System tables													
Countries														
CSS stylesheets	Tables Views Stored procedures	Tables Views Stored procedures												
Cultures	> System tables > User													
	Fields Queries Alternative forms Se	arch fields On-line marketing												
Document types		ait.)												
Form controls	Alternative forms > Edit profile (Commu	nity)												
Inline controls	General Fields Layout													
A Modules	FuliName*	Eavo field												
Rotifications	Email													
Page layouts	PreferredCultureCode													
Page templates	PreferredUICultureCode	Database												
🖷 Relationship names	UserIsEditor*	Column name:	FullName											
💐 Search engines	UserIsGlobalAdministrator*	Attribute type:	Text	~										
System tables	UserPasswordFormat	Attribute size:	450											
Tag groups	LastLogon	Allow empty value:												
Time zones	UserStartingAliasPath	Default value:												
Web part containers	UserLastModified*	Soldan Yalab.												
Web part containers	UserLastLogonInfo	🗹 Display attribute in the edit	ing form											
Web templates	UserVisibility	Field appearance												
Widgets	UserIsDomain UserHasAllowedCultures	Default visibility:	Display to all	•										
Workflows	UserSiteManagerDisabled	Visibility control:	Visibility (radio buttons - horizontal)	-										
	UserNickName UserPicture	Allow user to change field visibility:												
		Field caption:	Full name											
	Quick links:	Form control type:	•											
	Database Field appearance	Form control:	Text box	▼										
	Editing control settings	Field description:												
	Validation													
	CSS styles													

4. Switch to the **Layout** tab. Place the cursor to the FullName line, right-click and from the context menu, select **Row -> Insert Row After**. Type **'Display full name to:**' into the first column of the new line. Then place the cursor into the second column, choose FullName from the **Available fields** list and click the **Insert visibility control** button. The result should look as in the screenshot below.

Click **Save** to save the changes.

31



5. Now if you go to the live site and sign in as some of the sample users (e.g. **David** with blank password) and go to the profile editing section (click **Edit my profile** in the **Shortcuts** menu), you should be able to choose the Full name field visibility, as shown in the screenshot below.

I	lome Blogs New	vs Media Forums Groups Members Examples	Search
Ν	1v profile		
÷	ij prome		Shortcuts
I	Personal settings Change	e password Notifications	My profile Edit my profile
			My messages
	Username:	David Ditur	My friends
	Full name:	David Silver	My invitations
	Display full name to:	💿 Nobody 🔘 (all) 🔘 Site members 🔘 Friends	Create a new group
1	Email:	david.silver@localhost.local	Sign out
	Display my e-mail to:	◯ Nobody ◯ (all) ⑧ Site members ◯ Friends	
	Nickname:	David	My blogs
		* * D-a-v-i-d * * *	You currently do not have any blogs.
	Signature:		
			My groups
	Messaging notification e-mail:		Czech Republic fans This group is intended for people who are
	Time zone:	(none)	interested in the Czech Republic, Czech Republic
			residents, travellers who have vi

Further steps: You have learned how to let site users specify who will see their full name. The same way as described above, visibility controls can be added to any other field of their profiles.

2.2.5 Registration approval and double opt-in

By default, users are signed-in to the site and their user account becomes active immediately after successful registration. However, the two options highlighted in the following screenshot can be enabled in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Security & Membership**. By enabling these options, you can include additional steps in the registration procedure.

	CMS Desk User: 1 Global Administrato												
(global)	Security & Membership												
 Settings Ocontent URLs and SEO 	Save Image: Reset these settings to default These settings are global, they can be overridden by individual website settings. Please select a site to see or change the site settings.												
Security & Membership System	General												
 On-line marketing The commerce 	Administrator's e-mail @ admin@localhost.local												
 Mathematical Community Mathematical Science (Community) 	Send membership reminder (days)												
 Versioning & Synchronization Integration 	Deny login interval 2 10												
Cloud services Custom settings	Share user accounts on all sites 🛛 😨												
	Registrations												
	Reserved user names i admin;root;administrator;sysadmin;sa												
	Registration requires e-mail confirmation 📀 🔲												
	Registration requires administrator's approval 🧕 📃												
	Delete non-activated user after (days) 2 5												
	Require unique user e-mails 📀 🗹												
 Solution Solution Solution Parameter & Collaboration Parameter & Collaboration Parameter & Collaboration Parameter & Collaboration Count of the solution of the soluti	Send membership reminder (days) 10 Deny login interval 10 Share user accounts on all sites 2 Registrations 2 Reserved user names 2 admin;root;administrator;sysadmin;sa Registration requires e-mail confirmation 2 Registration requires administrator's approval 2 Delete non-activated user after (days) 2 Require unique user e-mails 2												

Registration requires e-mail confirmation

If checked, newly registered users will receive confirmation e-mail to the e-mail address specified on registration. This e-mail contains a confirmation link that needs to be clicked in order to activate the account. The e-mail is based on the **Membership - Registration** e-mail template.

0	🚽 ") Ü 🔶 🗸	*			Confi	rm your regi:	strati	ion - Message (HTN	1L)			-		x
	Message Ad	id-Ins												۲
Reply	Reply Forward to All Respond	Delete Move to Folder *	Create Rule	Other Actions •	Block Sender Jun	😵 Safe List 🖂 Not Juni hk E-mail	s * k	Categorize Follow Up + Options	Mark as Unread	 ♣ Find ♣ Related ▼ ↓ Select ▼ Find 	Send to OneNote OneNote			
From: To: Cc: Subject:	From: no-reply@localhost.local Sent: Mon 2/22/2010 3:46 PM To: John Newman Cc: Subject: Confirm your registration											:46 PM		
Than <u>http:/</u>	Thank you for registering at our site. Please click the link below to complete your registration: http://localhost/KenticoCMS/Special-pages/Registration-approval aspx?userguid=3684ba72-03a4-4672-85e4-8bd4a90f4b8f													
You can find your credentials below: Username: johnn											=			
1 455	word, 125450													
														•

After clicking the link, a special page will be opened in user's web browser, displaying the following message:

Your user account is now active. You can sign in using your user name and password. <u>Click here to</u> <u>continue</u>.

The link at the end of the message will redirect the user to the title page of the website. The user can then log in using the registration details received in the e-mail.

Registration requires administrator's approval

If this option is enabled, users will not be able to sign-in immediately after registration. Their registration will have to be approved by site administrator. At this point, users will receive an e-mail based on the **Membership - Registration waiting for approval** e-mail template. You can see the default version of the e-mail in the screenshot below.

Registration information - Message (HTML) _ = = X													
Message Add-Ins													
Reply Reply Forward to All Respond	Delete Move to Create Other Folder * Rule Actions * Actions	Block Sender Junk E-mail	Categorize Follow Mark as Up + Unread Options	A Find A Related → Select → Find Find A Related → Send to OneNote OneNote									
From: no-reply@localhost.local Sent: Tue 2/23/2010 2:57 PM To: John Newman Cc: Cc: Cc: Cc:													
Thank you for registe Registration details: Username: johnn Password: 123456	ring at our site CommunitySite.	Your registration must l	oe approved by administra	tor.									

In case that the option is enabled, the **Waiting for approval** tab will be displayed in **Site Manager** -> **Administration** -> **Users**. On this tab, site administrators can **Approve** (\checkmark) or **Reject** (\oslash) users' registration.

V Kentico															<u>CI</u>	1S Des	<u>k</u> U	ser: 🔺	Global	Admin	istrator	🔻 vē	6.0.424	ВЕТА		Si	gn Out
Site Manager Sites	Administ	ration	Setting	is D	evelopme	nt Too	ls	Dashbo	ard	License	s S	upport	Buy														
 Administration Avatars 	<u></u>	User	s				_				_														_		?
👦 Bad words	Users	Users Waiting for approval Mass e-mail On-line users																									
💑 Badges 👼 Banned IPs	😓 Waiting for approval																										
Categories	All	Α	в	с	D	E F		G	н	1	J	к	L	м	N	ο	р	Q	R	s	т	U	v	w	x	Y	z
 E-mail templates Event log 															Search												
Integration bus	→ <u>Dis</u>	play ac	dvanced f	ilter																							
Permissions	Ap	oprove	e all selec	cted us	iers	Reje	ct al	l select	ed use	ers																	
Recycle bin Roles			- Action	ns	Use	r name 🤞			Full na	ame		E-m	ail					Nic	kname		Create	ed				Enable	d
Scheduled tasks		1	V Ø		Josh				Joshua	o'Neil		josh	ua.one	il@loca	alhost.lo	cal		Jos	ı		8/20/2	011 3:	20:45 F	м		No	
Smart search																								Items	per p	age: 2	5 💌
Shirp servers																											
UI personalization																											
🚳 Web farm	•																										

After the administrator's approval, users receive another e-mail, confirming that their account has been approved and can be used. The e-mail is based on the **Membership - Registration approved** e-mail template. You can see the default appearance of the e-mail in the screenshot below.



Enabling both options

In case that you enable both of the options mentioned above, e-mail with the confirmation link will be sent first. After user's confirmation, registration will have to be approved by the administrator.



Please note

If you have one or both of the options enabled, it is important to set the **Redirect to URL**property of the registration web part properly. This means that users should not be redirected to any page displaying information about their user account (just as the **Members -> Profile** page on the sample Community Starter site). Because the account is not active yet (it is waiting for e-mail activation or approval), such page would display an error message, which might be misleading for the users.

Further steps: You have learned how to enable registration approval and double opt-in. At this point, you may want to try enabling the options and registering to the site to see how they work in practice. In this case, it will be necessary to set up the SMTP server in **Site Manager -> Settings -> System -> E-mails** in order for the e-mails to be sent correctly. You may also want to go to **Site Manager -> Administration -> E-mail templates** and modify some of the notification e-mail templates mentioned in the text above.

2.2.6 Windows Live ID

2.2.6.1 Overview

Windows LiveID is a **single sign-on service** provided and maintained by Microsoft. By integrating LiveID into your website, you can allow site visitors to log in to your website using their LiveID login and password.

More information about integration of Windows Live ID with Kentico CMS can be found in <u>Kentico CMS</u> <u>Developer's Guide -> Membership and User registration -> Windows Live ID</u>.

2.2.6.2 Adding the sign in button

After registering your website at msm.live.com and making the necessary settings, you only need to place the **Membership -> Windows LiveID** web part to your site. This web part works fine without any additional settings and can be placed on any page of your website.

In the following example, you will learn how to add the Windows LiveID web part to the sample **Community Starter site**. We will add the web part to the **zoneTopMembership** web part zone of the master page, next to the sign-in link. Like this, the LiveID sign-in button will always be displayed, no matter which particular page is currently displayed.

1. Sign in to **CMS Desk** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Select the master page (the root of the content tree) and switch to the **Design** tab.



2. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneTopMembership web part zone.

3. In the **Web part selection** dialog which pops-up, choose **Membership -> Windows LiveID** and click **OK**. The web part properties dialog pops-up. As mentioned above, no properties need to be set, so just click **OK**.

4. The web part is now placed on the master page. The web part itself is not visible now, but it is represented by the blue rectangle labeled **WindowsLiveID**. If you log-off now, you should see the web part on the page and it should be fully functional.


Further steps: You have learned how to add the Windows LivelD sign-in functionality to your website. In some cases, you may want the users to provide some additional details on registration via Windows LiveID. In this case, you would use the **LiveID required data** web part. A detailed description of this web part and the way it can be used can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Membership</u> and User registration -> Windows LiveID -> Available web parts.

2.3 Groups

2.3.1 Current functionality

1. Go to the live site and sign-in as **Kelly** with blank password. Click **Groups** in the main menu. You will be redirected to the **Groups** title page.

The **Your groups** section of this page displays all groups where the current user is a member. The **Recently added groups** section displays all groups on the site. If you click a group name or avatar, you will be redirected to the group's profile page. Enter the **African travellers** group profile.



2. You can see the group profile page now, just as in the screenshot below. The page has the following sections:

- Group profile basic information about the group its avatar, name, description, type of access and date of creation
- Group announcements this is a message board where group administrators can leave important group-related messages
- Latest in forums displays latest posts in the group's forums
- Most recent pages displays latest articles in the group pages section
- Shortcuts menu the following group-related actions are offered in the menu:
 - Create a new group can be used for creating new groups
 - Leave the group by clicking this link, the current user leaves the currently displayed group so that she is no longer a member of it
 - Invite to a group by clicking this link, group members can send invitations to the currently displayed group to other site members or via e-mail
- Group links menu this menu offers links to all sections of the currently displayed group:
 - Home group profile page
 - Pages group pages section with articles related to the group's field of interest, added by group members directly on the live site
 - Media group's media libraries where various types of files can be stored
 - **Members** page displaying a list of all members of the group; after clicking a user, you will be redirected to the user's public profile; right-clicking the users' avatars displays a context menu with other possible actions
 - Forums group's discussion forums
- Group administrators displays administrators of the current group; right-clicking the avatars

displays a context menu with possible actions

• Recent members - displays the latest group members; right-clicking the avatars displays a context menu with possible actions

Try browsing the sections and using the actions listed above. The site was designed to be very intuitive to work with, therefore you should not encounter any problems playing around with it.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
Groups	Czech_Repul	blic_fans								
Ŧ			Czech F	Republic	fans				Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile	
			This group is i who have visi	ntended for peop ted it and those	ole who are inter who are planning	rested in the Czech g to do so are all mo	Republic. Czech Re re than welcome to	epublic residents, travellers o join this group.	My messages My friends My invitations	
ain minis	-	-	Access: On	y group member	s can view the c	ontent			Leave the group Invite to group	
		and the	Created: 2/1	9/2010					Sign out	
Group a	nnouncen	nents							Group links	
There are n	o announceme	nts at this tin	ie						Home Pages Discover the Czech Media Members Eogure	<u>Republic</u>
Latest in	n forum s								roruns	
RE:The C	zech reput	<u>olic</u>							Group administ	trators
Hi, I was in Posted on 1	Prague for 5 d 10/28/2008	ays last week 8:10:19 PM	k, and I can ho	nestly say it is or	e of the most in	teresting and mesm	erising places I've	ever seen in Europe.	Gender: Male Age: 22	
<u>The Czec</u>	<u>ch republic</u>									
I love the C Posted on 1	zech Republic 10/25/2008	:) 5:33:10 PM							Recent member	rs
Most ree	cent pages	i							Kelly Gender: Fema	la
Discover	the Czech R	<u>epublic</u>							Age: 27	
Discover will be sur and breat	the Czech Rep rprised at what thtaking scene	ublic - a small t a variety of ries. You will t	country in the places to see a be amazed at h	very heart of Eu and things to do ow even a small	irope that has g there is. Don't m European count	ot something for ev iss out on any of th ry can significantly	eryone. No matter e country's natura contribute to the w	what your interests are, you I wonders, historic landmarks orld's cultural heritage.		
And after are brew	a nice day ful ed in this coun	l of impressior try?	ns, why not sp	end the evening	in one of the typ	pical Czech pubs, dr	inking some of the	best beers in the world that		

3. If you want to become a member of some other group, you can do it on the **Groups** title page. Right click the group you want to join. A context menu appears. Select the **Join the group** command.

1000-00	Africa	an travellere	
N.	ты 🚨	View group	a in
and the second second	Afr 🖓	Join the group	9 "

A pop-up window appears, asking you if you really want to join the group. Click **Join**. Depending on the group settings, you will either become a group member immediately, or your request will have to be approved by the group administrator.



Alternatively, you can also join a group by clicking the **Join the group** command in the **Shortcuts** menu when viewing a group profile.



4. You have just learned what the group member can see and do in this section. Now let's switch to the **group administrator's** point of view. Log-off the site and sign-in again as **David** with blank password. David is the **administrator of the Czech Republic fans group**, so view this group's profile the same way as you did above with Kelly.

The first thing you will probably notice is that there is the **Leave message** section below the **Group announcements** message board. Because David is the admin of this group, he can leave announcements. Try leaving one.

Leave me	ssage <u>Sub</u>	<u>Subscribe</u>	
Name:	David		
Your URL:	http://		
Your e-mail:	david.silver@localhost.local		
Message:	Hi everyone, I'm just sending a testing message to try how this Group announcements message board works.	*	
	Subscribe me to this message board		

After clicking the **Add** button, you should see the message present on the board:

Group announcements

David
Hi everyone, I'm just sending a testing message to try how this Group announcements message board works.
2/19/2010 4:44:42 PM

Edit Delete Reject Report abuse 5. You might have also noticed the **Manage the group** link in the **Shortcuts** menu.



Click it, you will be redirected to the group management section, which is also available only for group administrators. Try going through all the tabs and changing some settings. As this on-site group management interface is identical to the groups management interface in CMS Desk, you can refer to <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Groups -> Editing a group</u> for a detailed description and explanation of all the available settings. Other topics of the Module Groups chapter can be used as a source of other detailed information on the Groups module.



2.3.2 Creating a new group

New groups can be created two ways:

- Site users can create new groups on the live site using the **Create a new group** link in the **Shortcuts** menu. This is the most common way and most of the groups on most sites are created this way.
- Alternatively, if you want to pre-define a group manually from the administration interface, this can be done in **CMS Desk -> Tools -> Groups**.

In the following example, you will learn about both ways of creating groups:

1. Go to the live site and sign in as **David** with blank password. Click the **Create a new group** link in the **Shortcuts** menu.

Shortcuts
<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u>
Create a new group
Create a new blog
<u>Sign out</u>

- 2. Enter the following details into the Create new group form:
- Group name name of the group displayed on the live site and in the administration interface
- Description text describing the group, displayed in the list of groups
- **Approve members** determines if users can join the group with or without group admin's approval; the last options allows invited members to join without the approval
- Content access determines who can view content of the group pages

Click **OK**. You will receive a message saying that your group has been created, but needs administrator's approval.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples		Search
Create r	new g	roup							
By entering the group's field of	e details in f interest. I	to the form be It is a good wa	low, you can c y of attracting	reate your new site users with	user group. Mak the same interes	e sure you give the t to join your group	group a name a	nd description according to t	he <u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
Group name:	Ker	ntico CMS fa	ans						<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> My invitations
	Jo	in us if	you love	this outs	tanding CM	IS.	*		Create a new blog Sign out
Description:									Recent groups
		Any site memb	er can join				~		African travellers This is a group of
Approve mem	bers: 🔘 (Only approved Only approved	members can members can	join join except for ir	nvited members				If you are one of them, please register to the group. It is a great chance f
Content acces) ss: 0	Anybody can v Site members c	iew the conter an view the co	nt ontent					Australian travellers This is a group of Australian travellers. If
	0	Only group me	mbers can viev	v the content					you are one of them, please register to the group. It is a great chance for you
		OK							European travellers This is a group of Europe

3. Let's switch to the administrator's perspective now. Sign in to **CMS Desk** (use login *administrator* with blank password) and go to **Tool -> Groups**. You should see the new group present in the list, with the **Approved** column saying **No**. Click the **Approve** (✓) icon. From now on, the group is approved and published on the live site.

Kentic	0					<u>Live Site</u>	<u>Site Manager</u>	Community site 💌
CMS Desk	Content My d	esk Tools	Administration	E-commerce On-line	marketing			
	Polls iii Custom ta	ables	Sa Forums	Message boards			<u>a</u>	Reporting
Forms Media	🐴 Staging 🛛 👔 File impor	t Blogs	a Groups	Abuse report	Projects	Events	Newsletters	Web analytics
	Content		Comm	unity	Collabo	ration	Marketing 8	Reports
🗞 Groups								
🍇 <u>New group</u>								
Group name: LIKE	•							
Status: (all)		•						
s	earch							
* Actions	Display name 🔺	Approved						
1 🗙 🗸 🖉 🔻	African travellers	Yes						
/ 🗙 🗸 ⊘ 🔻	American travellers	Yes						
∕∕¥∢⊘ -	Asian travellers	Yes						
∥¥∢⊘ -	Australian travellers	Yes						
∕∕¥∢⊘ -	Czech Republic fans	Yes						
1240-	European travellers	Yes						
/ X 🗸 🗸 🗸	Kentico CMS Fans	No						

4. Now we will try the second way how groups can be created - pre-defining a group in the administration interface. Our group will be named **ASP.NET Developers**. At first, we will have to go to **CMS Desk -> Content** and create the group pages section. Select **Groups -> Template** from the content tree and copy the document under the Group pages node.



5. Select the new **Template** document that was copied under the **Group pages** node. Switch to the **Form** tab and change its name to **ASP_NET_Developers**. Click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My	<u>Live Site Site Mana</u> desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>iqer</u>
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search View mode Other	
Community site Home Blogs News Media Forums Groups Group pages Czech_Republic_fans American_travellers Asian_travellers Australian_travellers Australian_travellers African_travellers African_travellers Pages	Page Design Form Properties Analytics Save Spell check Document name: ASP_NET_Developers Teaser image: Upload file Menu group: (none) Publish from: Image: Now Publish to: Image: Now	

6. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab and change the **Document alias** also to **ASP_NET_Developers**. Click **Save**.

New Delete Anove Down Edit Preview Live site List Search							
Content management View mode Other							
Community site Page Design Form Properties Analytics							
Home Home Blogs Rews General							
Media Media VRLs Constant VRLs Constant VRLs Constant VRLs Document alias: ASP_NET_Developers							
✓ Group pages Metadata ✓ Czech_Republic_fans Categories ✓ American_travellars Use custom URL path	Document URL path Use custom URL path						
Asian_travellers Menu Path type: Standard URL or wildcard Route Morkflow Path or pattern: Standard URL or wildcard Norkflow Path or pattern: Standard URL or wildcard Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Standard URL or wildcard Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow Norkflow <l< td=""><td>IVC</td></l<>	IVC						
Australian_travellers Versions African_travellers Related docs ASP_NET_Developers Linked docs Linked docs URL extensions:							
Examples Security Files Special pages Logon page Search No data found.	Document aliases Add new alias No data found.						

7. As we have the group pages section prepared, we can proceed to creating the group itself. Go to **Tools -> Groups** and click the **New group** link at the top of the page.

Ke CMS	ntico Desk		Content	My desk	Tools	Administratio	on E-	commerce	On-line	marketing	<u>Live Sit</u>	<u>e Site Man</u>	ager	Community site	:e 🔻
Forms Med	jia 🆓 c	Polls Staging ontent	🙀 Cus	tom tables import	Blogs	S Ca	ums 👩 ups 🍙	Message Abuse re	e boards eport	Projects Collabo	Events pration	Newsletter Mark	s 🛐 seting 8	Reporting Web analytics Reports	
🇞 Group	s														
A New group)														
Group name: Status:	LIKE (all) Sea	rch			T										
- Actions		Display	y name 🔺	Ар	proved										
/× <) -	African	travellers	Ye	3										

8. The **New group** form appears. Compared to the on-site form described in step 2, this one contains some additional fields. We won't describe all of them now, you can find detailed descriptions in the context help (accessible via the 😰 icon at the top right corner of the page). Enter the following details:

- **Display name** ASP.NET Developers
- Code name ASP_NET_Developers
- Description Building websites using this Microsoft technology? Join us!!!
- Group pages location /Group-pages/ASP_NET_Developers
- Avatar click Select pre-defined avatar and pick one
- Approve members Any site member can join
- Content access Anybody can view the content
- Notify group admins when a user joins/leaves leave unchecked
- Notify group admins on pending members leave unchecked

Click OK.



9. The group is now created. If you go to the live site now, you should see it listed in the **Groups** section, as depicted below. If you enter the group profile, all sections should be fully functional (but of course with no content).



2.3.3 Modifying the group public profile

You can define which details will be displayed on group public profiles. The process is quite similar to modifying user public profiles described <u>here</u>. In the following example, you will learn how to add the **Group ID** field to the group public profiles.

Group public profiles display information from the **Community_Group** system table using an alternative form. In our case, it is the **Display profile** alternative form. We will have to modify the alternative form to achieve the required functionality. For more information about the Alternative forms concept, please refer to the <u>Module Alternative forms</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Sign in to **Site Manager** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Go to **Development -> System tables** and choose to **Edit** (*P*) the **Group** (Community_Group) system table.

49

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development	Tools Dashboard	Licenses Support	<u>CMS Desk</u> Buy				
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures 	System tables Tables Views Stored procedures								
Custom settings	→ Actions✓	Class display name 🔺 Contact management - /	Class nar Account OM.Accou	ne	Table name OM_Account				
Socument types Socument types Form controls Inline controls	/ - / -	Contact management - Ecommerce - Bundle	Contact OM.Conta ecommerc	ict ce.bundle	OM_Contact COM_Bundle				
🛃 Modules 🗟 Notifications 🔳 Page Jayouts	<i>I</i>	Ecommerce - Customer Ecommerce - Order	ecommero	ce.customer ce.order	COM_Customer COM_Order				
Page templates		Ecommerce - Order iten Ecommerce - Shopping	n ecommero cart ecommero	ce.orderitem ce.shoppingcart	COM_OrderItem COM_ShoppingCart				
Search engines System tables Tag groups		Ecommerce - Shopping Ecommerce - SKU	cart item ecommerc ecommerc	ce.shoppingcartitem ce.sku	COM_ShoppingCartSKU COM_SKU				
Time zones UI cultures Web part containers		Group Media file	Communit media.file	ly.Group	Community_Group Media_File				
 Web parts Web templates 		Newsletter - Subscriber User	newsletter cms.user	subscriber	Newsletter_Subscriber CMS_User				
 Widgets Workflows 	/ -	User - Settings	cms.users	ettings	CMS_UserSettings				

2. Switch to the Alternative forms tab and choose to Edit (*V*) the Display profile alternative form.

Ne Kentico		_				<u>CMS Desk</u>
Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Developmen	nt Tools Das	hboard Licenses	Support E	Buy
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures Cultures Custom settings Custom tables Document types Form controls Inline controls Modules Notifications Page layouts Page templates Relationship names Search engines System tables 	Administration Image: Administration Image: System Tables View System table Fields Querie Image: Create new field Actions Image: Create new field	s Stored procedures s Stored procedures s Alternative forms form Display name Display profile	Code name DisplayProfile			30 ¥
Tag groups						

3. Switch to the **Fields** tab, select **GroupID** from the list of available fields and check the **Display attribute in the editing form** check-box. Click **ave field**.



4. Switch to the Layout tab. We will place the GroupID field above the GroupAccess field. Place the cursor in the line with GroupAccess controls, right-click and choose Row -> Insert Row Before from the context menu.

Kentico		CMS Desk User: L Global Administrator
Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development Tools Dashboard Licenses Support Buy	
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures Custom settings Custom tables Document types Form controls Inline controls Modules Notifications Page layouts 	System tables Tables Views System tables Group Fields Queries Alternative forms Display profile General Fields Layout Save Views Use custom form layout	
Page templates	Use custom form layout	
Relationship names	Generate table layout	
System tables	El Source de Este este ABC + C + ABC +	Available fields:
 ✓ Tag groups ✓ Tag groups ⊘ Time zones @ UI cultures @ Web part containers ✓ Web parts 	$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	GroupDisplayName GroupDisplayName GroupAccess GroupAvatarID GroupCreatedWhen GroupCreatedWhen GroupSendVaitingForAppro
Web templates	\$\$input:GroupDisplayName\$\$	GroupSecurity GroupLogActivity
 Widgets Workflows 	\$\$input:GroupAvatarID\$\$ \$\$input:GroupAccess\$\$ \$\$iabel:GroupAccess\$\$ \$\$iabel:GroupAccess\$\$ \$\$iabel:GroupAccess\$\$ \$\$iabel:GroupAccess\$\$	
	Row	Insert Row Before
	Colum	Insert Row After
	Delete	Properties

5. The former layout gets a bit scrambled by this action. We will need to make this right before we

proceed. Delete the three empty cells highlighted in the screenshot below by placing the cursor in each of them, right-clicking and choosing **Cell -> Delete Cells** from the context menu.



6. Now we have the layout as we want it, so we can proceed to adding the controls. Select **GroupID** from the **Available fields** list, place the cursor in the first empty cell and click **Insert label**. Highlight the entered text and make it bold, so that it looks the same as the other two labels. Place the cursor in the second empty cell and click **Insert input**. The result should look as in the screenshot below. Click **Save** to save the changes.



7. Go to the live site now and view some group's profile. You should see the **GroupID** field as highlighted in the screenshot below.



2.3.4 Modifying templates for group pages

The **Groups -> Template** page and its child (**Pages**) are the group pages template. Based on this template, group pages section for user-contributed articles is created for each group. As you may have noticed in the <u>Creating a new group</u> chapter, these pages are copied under the **Group pages** node when a group is created on-site. The Template page is renamed to the name of the new group in this case. When creating a group via the administration interface, you need to copy the pages manually, rename the Template page, change its alias and specify the path in the group creating form.

In the following example, you will learn how to add the Content rating web part to the template so that

users will be able to rate the articles in the group pages sections.

1. Log in to **CMS Desk** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Switch to the **Edit -> Design** tab and select **Groups -> Template -> Pages** from the content tree.

2. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneList web part zone and choose the Content rating -> Content rating web part.

3. In the web part properties window, set only the following property:

• Show for document types: CMS.SimpleArticle

This ensures that the web part will be displayed only for the articles and not in the list. Click OK.

<i> Web part propertie</i>	s (Content rating) - Windows Internet	Explorer		
🦂 Web part p	oroperties (Content rating)			Documentation
General Layout				
\checkmark	Visibility			A
Default	3.8-161	. 📼		
Visibility	VISIDIE:			
Scale settings	Hide on subpages:	•		=
Messages				
Permissions	Show for document types:	CMS.SimpleArticle	Select Clear	
Web part container	Display to salesy		Add solar Class	
HTML Envelope	Display to roles.	•	Add foles Clear	•
XALA				
Time zones	Scale settings			
Partial caching	Rating value:	•		
	Rating type*:	► Stars	•	
	Max rating value*:	▶ 5		
	Messages			
	Show reculte:			-
Refresh content			OK Cano	el Apply

4. The web part is now placed on the page. Notice that when you switch to some of these pages in the **Group pages** section (e.g. *Group pages -> American travellers -> Pages*), the web part appears there too. This happens because these pages share the same page template - **Community Site - Group pages**. Any modifications that you make to the original page or to the copies will be reflected on all the pages using this page template.



5. If you go to the live site now, you should see the **Content rating** web part on all articles in all group pages sections. If you create a new group and create some article in its group pages section, the web part will appear on it too.

Home Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples		Search		
Groups American travellers Pages My flight to Australia										
	<u>te</u>							Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile		
My flight to I recently had the exp long it actually is. Even usual waypoints are H While the plane was b Impressive at least. It the world's biggest or After then, we entere	Australia erience of flying 1 today's best a ong Kong and B eing refueled ar was many time ssroads. Right d the plane aga	g from Europe airplanes are no Bangkok. We m nd prepared fo is the size of th here was wher ain and began t	to Australia. For ot able to fly the ade a stop at th r the second hal he Prague airpor re I realized the the rest of our fly	those of you w whole distance e second mention f of our flight, w t and watching to true sense of th ight. Even thou gibt. Even thou	who haven't ever flo from Europe to Au oned. we had to leave it a the traffic there wa the well know phrase gh I slept the most	win such a long dist stralia, so they hav nd spend about one is just breathtaking, t that the world is g of the time, I feel r	ance: you can't imagine how e to make a refuel stop. The : hour at the airport. . It seemed to me like one of etting smaller and smaller. ather tired at the moment, so	My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Join the group Manage the group Invite to group Create a new blog Sign out		
<mark>☆☆☆☆</mark> Current rating: 4 (1 ra	tings)							Group links Home Pages My fight to Australia Members Forums		

Further steps: You have learned how to add the Content rating web part to the group pages. This way, you can place any web part to the pages and achieve your required functionality. As you have seen, modifications made to any of the group pages are automatically reflected on all other group pages because of the shared page template. If you want to achieve different functionality on some of the group pages, you will have to switch to the Properties -> Template tab and click **Clone as ad-hoc template**. Changes made to a page with this cloned ad-hoc template will not be reflected on pages using the original page template.

2.4 Forums

2.4.1 Current functionality

The **Forums** section contains the typical discussion forums that can be found on most websites on today's Web, allowing site users to read and contribute to discussions on various topics. While forums are one of the most common features on today's websites, we won't go deep into describing how they can be used, as we believe it should be a familiar subject for you already. For detailed information on the Kentico CMS Forums module, please refer to Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Forums.

If you enter the Forums section as a site visitor, you can see that the forums are divided into two main sections - **Community forums** and **Back-packer forums**. These sections are called **forum groups**. Forum groups contain **forums** (Announcements, Community FAQs, ...) and the forums contain particular **threads**. There are two types of threads:

- Discussion forums threads contain standard discussion on a given topic
- Question-Answer forum threads are structured so that the first post is a question and the following posts are trying to answer the given question

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
Forum	าร									
								50	earch forum	Go Advanced search
Forum								Threads	Posts	Last post
Com	nunity f	orume								
This is a	a general foru	m for both reg	istered and no	t registered site	users.					
Announcements Find out the latest news about our community here Lock						2	2	Jenny (10/25/2008 11:59:09 AM)		
P	Community FAQ Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about our community Lock						1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 2:01:55 PM)	
P	General discussion General discussion without rules and limitations					2	6	David (10/25/2008 3:10:11 PM)		
P	Members Discussion fo	s discussion or community i	<u>n</u> members only					1	5	Pogo (11/5/2008 4:20:25 PM)
Forum								Threads	Posts	Last post
Back	-packer	forums								
This for	rum is intended	d for user grou	ups, their meml	bers and topics r	elated to the pa	articular groups.				
P	Find out the latest news about groups here					1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 5:51:40 PM)		
	FAQs Answers to Lock	Frequently As	ked Questions	about groups				1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 6:15:57 PM)
General discussion General discussion without rules and limitations						5	19	Jimbo (1/7/2009 3:13:50 PM)		

If you view the **Forums** page in CMS Desk's **Design** tab, you can see that each forum group is displayed via one **Forum group** web part. You can place a forum group to any page of your website by placing the **Forum group** web part on the page and setting its **Group name** property.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	<u>Live Site Manager</u> Community site - desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing	▲ Glob	al Administr	ator 🔻 v6.0.4248 BETA 🛛 🚷 Sign Out definition of the second state of the second sta
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search View mode Other			?
🗢 🕘 Community site®	Page Design Form Properties			?
 Home● Blogs● News● 	ForumGroup	Threads	Posts	Last post
Media	This is a general forum for both registered and not registered site users.			
 Groups Groups Group pages Members Examples 	Announcements Find out the latest news about our community here Lock	2	2	Jenny (10/25/2008 11:59:09 AM)
 Camples Camples Camples Special pages Logon page 	Community FAQ Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about our community Lock	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 2:01:55 PM)
Search *	General discussion General discussion without rules and limitations	2	6	David (10/25/2008 3:10:11 PM)
	Members discussion Discussion for community members only Lack	1	5	Pogo (11/5/2008 4:20:25 PM)
	TenumGround (3)	Threads	Posts	Last post
	Back-packer forums This forum is intended for user groups, their members and topics related to the particular groups.			
	Announcements Find out the latest news about groups here Lock	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 5:51:40 PM)
	EAQs Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about groups Lock	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 6:15:57 PM)

Forums management can be performed in **CMS Desk -> Tools -> Forums**. On the page, you can see a list of existing forum groups. By clicking the **Edit** (\checkmark) icon, you can enter the **Forum group properties** section.

	Kenti	ico		1	_				<u>Liv</u>	<u>e Site</u>	Site Manager	Community site 💌
	CMS De	sk	Content	My desk	Tools A	dministration	E-commerce	On-line	marketing			
Berla	-	🥟 Polls	🙀 Cus	tom tables		🚨 Forums	📋 Message	boards	1			Reporting
Forms	Media	🧌 Staging	🔋 🕞 File	import	Blogs	🍇 Groups	🧃 Abuse rej	port	Projects	Events	Newsletters	Web analytics
		Content			Community			Collaboration		Marketi	Marketing & Reports	
🥦 Fo	Search and the search											
🍂 <u>New f</u>	orum grou	Þ										
	ions	Group	name									
\oslash ×	1 🕹 🤊	Comm	unity forun	ns								
1	1 🕹 🤊	Back-	oacker foru	ms								

There are three tabs available in this section:

• Forums - a list of forums in the forum group; you can change the order in which the forums will be displayed by clicking the Move up () and Move down () arrows; you can also Delete () particular forums or click the Edit () icon, which displays the forum's management section described below

- **General** on this tab, you can set some basic properties of this forum group; the properties can be inherited by particular forums
- View displays a preview of how the forum group appears on the live site

<u> </u> Forum grou	p properties						?		
> Forum groups > Community forums									
Forums General View									
Se Add forum									
 Actions 	Forum name	Status	Moderated	Threads	Posts	Last post	Last post by		
1 🖌 🗶 🕆 🖉	Announcements	Open	No	2	2	10/25/2008 11:59:09 AM	Jenny		
1 🖉 💥 🕆 👻 👻	Community FAQ	Open	No	1	1	10/25/2008 2:01:55 PM	Jenny		
1 🗶 😭 🐺 👻	General discussion	Open	No	2	6	10/25/2008 3:10:11 PM	David		
1 🖉 💥 👚 🗸 💌	Members discussion	Open	No	1	5	11/5/2008 4:20:25 PM	Pogo		
						Items per	page: 25 💌		

The forum management section accessible by clicking the **Edit** (\checkmark) icon offers the following tabs:

- **Posts** tree-like view of threads in the forum, with the possibility of performing management tasks like editing or deleting posts, replying to them, approving or rejecting, etc.
- **General** general properties of the forum, which can be inherited from the forum group's general tab mentioned above
- **Subscriptions** management of subscriptions; users can subscribe to receiving notifications about new posts
- **Moderators** on this tab, you can set if the forum is moderated and assign site users with the rights to moderate this forum
- Security on this tab, you can set permissions for particular actions in the forum
- View displays a preview of how the forum group appears on the live site



2.4.2 Modifying the forums structure

When developing your community site from the Community Starter site template, you will probably want to modify the forums structure so that it matches the needs of your community. In the following example, you will learn how to **create a new forum group** and **replace the Back-packer forums** with it.

1. Go to CMS Desk -> Tools -> Forums and click the New forum group link at the top of the page.

Kentico						<u>Liv</u>	<u>e Site</u>	<u>Site Manager</u>	Community site 💌	
CMIS Desk	Content My desk	Tools Ad	ministration	E-commerce	On-line	marketing				
	Polls 🛛 🏭 Custom tables		Sector Se	Message	boards				Reporting	
Forms Media 🦓) Staging 🛛 👔 File import	Blogs	🍇 Groups	🧃 Abuse rep	ort	Projects	Events	Newsletters	🛐 Web analytics	
C	Content		Comm	unity		Collabo	Collaboration		Marketing & Reports	
<u>೩</u> Forum grou	Sa Forum groups									
New forum group										
- Actions	Group name									
N 🗙 🕆 🦊 🔻	Community forums									
1 🖉 💥 👚 🗸 🔻	Back-packer forums									

- 2. On the New forum group page, enter the following details:
- Group display name name of the forum group displayed on the live site and in the administration interface
- Group code name name of the forum group used in website code
- **Description** text describing the forum group, displayed above the list of forums in the group on the live site
- Forum group base URL URL of the page where the Forum group web part displaying this forum group resides; leave the *Inherit from settings* check-box checked
- Forum group unsubscription URL URL of the page where the Forum unsubscription web part resides; leave the *Inherit from settings* check-box checked

Click OK.

Mc Kentico				<u>Live Site</u>	Site Manager Community site 💌
CMS Desk Co	ontent My desk Tool	s Administration	E-commerce On-li	ine marketing	
Forms Media 🆓 Staging (Custom tables	Blogs & Groups	 Message board Abuse report 	s 🛐 F	s Newsletters I Web analytics
Content		Commu	inity	Collaboration	Marketing & Reports
& New forum group					
> Groups > New forum group					
·					
Group display name:	Web development for	rums			
Group code name:	WebDevelopmentFor	rums			
Description:	This forum group discussion relat development, rel technologies, jo field and many m	o contains ted to web lated ob offers in th: more.	is .		
Forum group base URL:	~/Forums.aspx		Inherit	from settings	
Forum group unsubscription URL:	~/Special-Pages/Foru	um-Unsubscribe.asp	× 🛛 Inherit	from settings	
	ок				

3. The **Forum group properties** page will be displayed. Let's make some additional settings which you may find useful before we start defining the forums within this forum group. Switch to the **General** tab and set the following properties:

- Forum type User can choose; this option enables users to choose from classical or Question-Answer type when creating a new thread
- User can edit own posts enable this option so that users can edit their own posts
- User can delete own posts enable this option so that users can delete their own posts
- Enable * in posts enable all the check-boxes so that users can use all BBcode macros in their posts; for more details on supported BBcode macros, please refer to <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide</u> -> <u>Module Forums -> BBcode support</u>

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click OK.

Kentico CMS Desk Content	<u>Live Site Manager</u> Community site
Forms Media Staging Content	Custom tables File import Blogs & Groups Abuse report Community Collaboration Marketing & Reporting
<u> </u> Forum group properties	S
> Forum groups > Web development	forums
Forums General View	
	field and many more.
Forum group base URL:	~/Forums.aspx
Forum group unsubscription URL:	~/Special-Pages/Forum-Unsubscribe.aspx
Require e-mail addresses:	
Enable WYSIWYG editor:	
Use security code (CAPTCHA):	
Forum type:	User can choose Discussion forum Question-Answer forum
Minimum votes to mark post as answe	r. 5
Maximum image side size:	400
Attachment max. file size (kB):	0
User can edit own posts:	
User can delete own posts:	
Enable links in posts:	No Simple dialog Advanced dialog
Enable images in posts:	No Simple dialog Advanced dialog
Enable quotes in posts:	
Enable code snippets in posts .	
Enable italics font in posts:	
Enable underline font in posts:	
Enable strike font in posts:	
Enable font colors in posts:	
	ОК

4. Now we will define the forum group structure - the particular forums. Switch to the **Forums** tab and click the **Add forum** link.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My desk	Tools Administration E-commerce On-line	<u>Live Site Si</u> marketing	ite Manager Community site 💌					
Forms Media Staging (Green Folls)	Forums Message boards Blogs & Groups Abuse report	Projects Events	Newsletters Web analytics					
Content Community Collaboration Marketing & Reports								
Forum groups > Web development forums Forums General View								
Add forum								

No data found.

- 5. Enter the following details:
- Forum display name name of the forum displayed on the live site and in the administration interface
- Forum code name name of the forum used in website code
- **Description** text describing the content of the forum, displayed in the list of forums in the group on the live site

You can set the rest of the properties to inherit the settings from the parent forum group and click **OK** to save the forum.

Ne Kentico				Live Site	<u>Site I</u>	Manager	Community site 💌
CMS Desk	Content My desk <mark>Tools</mark> Administrat	tion E-comme	rce On-line ma	rketing			
📋 🛛 🙀 🥪 Polls	🟢 Custom tables 📄 🚨 Fo	orums 📋 Mes	sage boards	2			Reporting
Forms Media 🌇 Staging	🖫 File import 🛛 Blogs 🛔 Gr	roups 🍙 Abu	se report	Projects Eve	ints	Newsletters	🛐 Web analytics
Content		Community		Collaboratio	n	Marketi	ng & Reports
Server group prope	erties						
> Forum groups > Web develop	oment forums						
Forums General View							
Forums > New forum							
Forum display name:	ASP.NET Discussion						
Forum code name:	ASP_NET_Discussion						
	Discussion related to this Microsoft technology.	~					
Deseriation							
Description.							
		-					
Forum base URL:	~/Forums.aspx		Inherit from f	orum group			
Forum unsubscription URL:	~/Special-Pages/Forum-Unsubscribe	e.aspx	Inherit from f	orum group			
Require e-mail addresses:			Inherit from f	orum group			
Display e-mail addresses:			Inherit from f	orum group			
Enable WYSIWYG editor:			Inherit from f	orum group			
Use security code (CAPTCHA):			Inherit from f	orum group			
Forum is open:							
Forum is locked:							
Forum is moderated:							
	ок						

6. You are redirected to the forum editing section. If you switch to the **Forums** tab again, you should see the newly created forum in the list. Repeat the procedure and define some other forums in this forum group. When you are finished, you should see all the forums in the list on the **Forums** tab like in the screenshot below.

Sa Forum group properties ?										
> Forum groups > Web development forums										
Forums General View										
Se Add forum										
- Actions	Forum name	Status	Moderated	Threads	Posts	Last post	Last post by			
1 🗙 🕆 🦊 👻	Web development jobs	Open	No	0	0					
1 🗙 🕆 🕹 🔻	PHP Discussion	Open	No	0	0					
N 🗙 🕆 🦊 🔻	ASP.NET Discussion	Open	No	0	0					
						Items per	page: 25 💌			

7. Now when the forum group is created and the forums in it defined, we can publish the forum group on the live site. We will place it instead of the original **Back-packer forums**.

Go to **CMS Desk -> Content -> Edit**. Select the **Forums** document from the content tree and switch to the **Design** tab. Scroll down the page and choose to **Configure** (^(a)) the **ForumGroup1** web part.



8. In the web part properties window, change the value of the **Group name** property to the name of the new forum group created above, which is **Web development forums** in our case. Click **OK**.

Web part properties	(Forum group) Webpage Dialog			×
🦂 Web part pr	operties (Forum group)			Documentation
General Layout 💋				
\checkmark	Visible:	• 🗸		•
Default	Hide on subpages:			
Visibility Group settings	Show for document types:	•	Select Clear	E
Post options	onow for document types.			
Post extended options	Display to roles:	•	Add roles Clear	
Behaviour				
Abuse report	Group settings			
Paging	Forum laugust	. Elet		
Friendly URLs	Forum layout".	 Fial 	•	
Tree forum properties	Site name:	•	Select Clear	
Web part container				
HTML Envelope	Group name:	Community forums	•	
AJAX		Back-packer forums Community forums		
Time zones		Web development forums		
Partial caching	Post options			
	Enable favorites:			-
Refresh content			OK Cance	Apply

9. If you switch to the live site now, you should see that the **Back-packer forums** have been replaced by the **Web development forums** defined earlier in this example. The forum group is fully functional and the discussion may begin.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Searc
Forum	ns									
usernam	ne			Log o	n			5	earch forur	Advanced sear
Forum								Threads	Posts	Last post
Comr This is a	munity f a general foru	orums	gistered and no	t registered site	users.					
P	Annound Find out the	e <u>ments</u> e latest news a	about our comn	nunity here				2	2	Jenny (10/25/2008 11:59:09 AM)
Community FAQ Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about our community								1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 2:01:55 PM)
P	General General disc	discussion cussion withou	ut rules and limit	ations				2	6	David (10/25/2008 3:10:11 PM)
P	Member Discussion f	s discussio for community	n members only					1	5	Pogo (11/5/2008 4:20:25 PM)
Forum								Threads	Posts	Last post
Web This for	develop	ment fo	orums on related to w	eb development	, related techno	logies, job offers ir	this field and man	iy more.		
P	Web dev	velopment	jobs					0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)
P	PHP Disc	cussion						0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)
P	ASP.NET	Discussio	<u>n</u> Microsoft techr	nology.				0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)

Further steps: You have learnt how to define a new forum group and publish it on the live site. Like this, you can define another forum group and publish it instead of the Community forums forum group. In case that you wanted to have more than two forum groups published, you only need to place another **Forum group** web part on the page and define its **Group name** property. You may also want to have only one forum group published, in which case you only need to remove one of the Forum Group web parts.

2.5 Blogs

2.5.1 Current functionality

The Blogs module is a 'ready-made' solution and you will probably not need to make any customization tasks to it. However, we will at least describe its functionality from the site user's perspective in brief. Detailed information on the Blogs module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Blogs</u>.

1. Go to the live site and sign in as **David** with blank password. Click **Blogs** in the main menu.

On the **Blogs section's title page**, you can see recent blog posts from all blogs on the site. You can browse the posts by topic - by clicking a keyword in the **Tag cloud**, a list of blog posts tagged with the keyword will be displayed. You can also browse the posts by particular blogs. The **Recent blogs** box displays links to the most recently created blogs and a link to the list of all blogs. After clicking a blog link, both in this box or in the list of blogs, you will be redirected to its title page.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples		Search			
Recent	t blog	posts										
<u> </u>	Sign in											
<u> </u>	The long long flight											
	Finally, after some 23 hours of flight, I am on the other side of the world than I was yesterday around this time. I feel terribly tired after the long flight, but before I go to sleep, I found some time to write about the first											
CE 4	- Lie								RSS Feed			
									Recent blog posts			
				Posted to Ho	iday in Austra	<mark>lia</mark> by Kelly Tayl a	or on 10/26/2008 3	:05:12 PM with <u>0 comments</u>				
									Shortcuts			
Elyin	ng tomo	rrow							Join the community			
0												
	<u>.</u>	Hi everybody, after six montl always been or get for it, it is f	my name is h hs of hard ev ne of the plac inally afforda	Kelly Taylor an reryday work, ces I had want able for me to	d I come fron I decided to h ed to visit on get there.	n Brno, Czech Re ave some nice t e day, and now,	public. Tomorro ime and go on h with my great ne	w is my big day. Finally, oliday. Australia has ew job and the wage I	Tag cloud airoot Austria Austria bus Culsine Czech Republic flight France Germany hitchhiking holday			
				Posted to Hol	iday in Austra	ilia by Kelly Tayk	or on 10/26/2008 2	19:18 PM with <u>0 comments</u>	hostel Italy luggage sacher torte Slovenia Spain subway tourism			

2. Click some blog in the **Recent blogs** box to display its title page. The **blog's title page** is similar to the Blogs section's title page, but displays only posts from the current blog. In addition to the Tag cloud, you can browse posts in the current blog **by months** too. By clicking a month link in the **Post archive** box, you can display only posts from the clicked month.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
Abi's e	uropear	n trip								
		· · · ·							RSS Feed	
<u>Sayir</u>	<u>ng goodb</u>	ye Europe	2						Recent blog p	osts
Paris, our final destination. Because there's no upcoming hitchhiking trip, the tension between PJ and me is all gone. I have a friend here, so the last night we spend in his place, drinking wine and using his computer to look at pictures we've taken during our month in Europe. Today, PJ went to do some shopping and we've promised each other go out have dinner tonight.										
			Pos	ted to <u>Abi's eur</u>	opean trip by	Abigail Woodwa	r th on 7/5/2008 1:	56:04 PM with <u>0 comment</u>	Create a new grou	<u>n</u>
.									Create a new blog Sign Out	L
<u>Wirs</u>	sind Berlir	<u>ners</u>								
Berlin, after a long time the city we both wanted to see. And as we're almost done with our trip, we're getting much more relaxed in comparison with just week ago. We are almost able to joke with each other again. We don't have much money left, though, so we're mostly hanging around, considering every Euro, spent for the gallery ticket.								Tag cloud airport Australia A cuisine Czech Rep France Germany hitchhikin hostel Italy Juga slovenia Spain sub	<u>ustria bus</u> <u>ublic flight</u> <u>ge holiday</u> ge <u>sacher torte</u> <u>wway tourism</u>	
			Pos	ted to <u>Abi's eur</u>	opean trip by	Abigail Woodwa	r th on 7/3/2008 1:	54:27 PM with <u>0 comment</u>	<u>s</u> traffic train	
Disa	oointmen	t in Pragu	<u>e</u>						Recent blogs	i
0									Abi's european	trip
	I'm rat	supposed t her glad to s	o pick up PJ see me. The	in Bratislava. A trip to Prague	gain, I don't l is one smootl	have to hitchhike h ride. But the cil	e so I'm taking a sy center is jamr	bus. Oddly enough, PJ's ned with people again.	s <u>View all blogs</u>	ralia
and the second	Wh	y all tourist:	s share the n	eed of visiting	same places	at the same tim	e?		Latest blog o	comments

3. Click some blog post to display it. Below the text, you can find the **Content rating** web part, social bookmarking links, trackbacking URL and the comments section where you can post comments on the blog post.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples		Search			
Abi's	europea	an trip >	July 200	08								
-									RSS Feed			
<u>Edit</u>	X <u>Delete</u>								Recent blog posts			
w	Wir sind Berliners											
0									Shortcuts			
		My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog										
Becaus	Because that Euro might have been the next breakfast.											
Tomorr though seem, t stuff. A near ho	ow morning, w . The few of yo cogether with P A camera, two p ostels a lot. We	e're setting of fo ou were curious D, we have such pair of shoes an have our sleep	or our last hitch about it. Well, ceeded in fitting d some clothes ing bags in case	hiking trip. So fa let's put some lig g everything into but not much. V e of emergency a	ar, I didn't tell yo pht on the subject two backpacks Ve take advanta as well. Everyth	ou how we manage ct. First of all, we h . To be honest with ge of the public lai ing else is just junk	to hitchiking with a nave barely any lug n you, one really do undries that are usu that you can do w	II the luggage we have, Igage at all. Oddly as it may pesn't need to have much ually conveniently located ithout.	Latest blog comments There are currently no comments.			
When waiting impress	ve're waiting fo for more than ive.	or the ride, we a an hour for a rie	lways form our de, beside thos	backpacks into a e troubles in Pyr	a sophisticated p enees. Everyon	oile that looks much e who has ever tri	n smaller than it is, i ed hitchhiking must	in reality. And I don't recall admit that it is more than	Post archive			
						Posted by	Abigail Woodwa	arth on 7/3/2008 1:54:27 PM				
							Filed under: G	ermany, luggage, hitchhiking	L			
***	ेन्द्रे Current	rating: 0 (0 rati	ngs)									
Bookmark	this page to:		🧧 STE 🛐 🥁	🔤 🎽 🚺 🌆	25 🗖 🚺 👭		1 G. 🔝 🖦 🕅 🗗					
Trackbad	«URL: http://lo	calhost/Kentico	CMS_0217/trac	kback/bc60d227	7-73b6-4d21-b3	88-35ccade81adc/	Wir-sind-Berliners.a	aspx				
Blog post	omments currently does	n't have any co	mments.									
Leave	comment				Subs	<u>cribe</u>						

Name: Admin

4. When we have seen what the Blogs section on the site looks like, we can try creating our new blog. This can be done anywhere on the live site by clicking the **Create a new blog** link in the **Shortcuts** menu.



5. On the **Create new blog** page, you only need to enter the name and description of your new blog and click **OK**.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples		Search		
Create n	Create new blog										
V				بالانتقار المتعارية	e-Id-It-It V-			lata latan Africa a darittina	Shortcuts		
these details, yo	your new ou will be	able to edit yo	ur blog's prope	rties or start blo	gging immediate	u will be able to ch ly.	ange the entered o	ata later. After submitting	<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile		
									<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u>		
									My invitations		
Blog name:	My fir	st blog							Create a new group		
	This	is my fi	rst atte	mpt to cre	ate a blog	1.	*		Signout		
Blog description	1:								Recent blogs		
									Abi's european trip		
							~		Holiday in Australia		
		ОК							View all blogs		

6. The blog is now created and you are redirected to the blog's title page, where you can **Edit blog** (*V*) properties or write a **New blog post**.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples	Search
My firs	t blog							
Edit blo	g							RSS Feed
<u>New blog</u>	<u>post</u>							Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations

7. From now on, the blog is fully functional. You can find a link to the blog in the **Recent blogs** box on the **Blogs** title page, in the **list of all blogs** and on your **public profile** page.

2.6 Media libraries

2.6.1 Current functionality

The media libraries allow convenient storage of **large amounts of files**. Not only media files, but also files of any other types can be stored within the libraries, while even **large file sizes** (several GB) are supported. Media libraries can be either global or related to a particular group. For detailed information on the module, please refer to <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Media libraries</u>.

1. If you go to the live site, you can enter the site's global media libraries section by clicking the **Media** link in the main menu. This section displays the content of the only global media library on the site, which is named **Media**. You can see the library's folder structure tree on the left. By clicking a folder, files stored within the folder will be displayed in the main area.



Part 1

67

2. If you click a file's thumbnail, the file will be displayed in the main area. Depending on the type of file, the display may vary. Images will be displayed in large size, videos or sound files display a player where the files can be played. Documents are displayed only in form of the document type icons. Additional information about the file is displayed in the bottom left corner. All files can be downloaded using the **Download** link at the bottom right corner.



3. As we mentioned above, groups can also have their own media libraries. This is the case of the **Czech Republic fans** group on this sample site. If you go to **Groups -> Czech Republic fans** and click the **Media** link in the **Group links** box, media libraries of the group will be displayed.

68

Home Blogs News	Media Forums	Groups	Members	Examples		Search					
Groups > Czech Republic fans > Media											
Bellow you can find list of group media libr		Shortcuts									
	Czech nature Czech nature is really nic	e.				My profile Edit my profile My messages My firends My invitations Create a new group Join the group Manage the group Invite to group Create a new blog					
	<u>Czech cities</u> Czech cities are amazing.					Group links Home Media Homes Forums					

2.6.2 Creating custom media libraries

In the following example, you will learn how to create a new global media library and publish it on the site.

1. Go to **CMS Desk -> Tools -> Media libraries** and click the **New media library** link at the top of the page.

	Kent	ico										<u>Live Site</u>
	CMS De	sk	(Conte	nt My desk	Tools	Administration	E-o	ommerce	On-line	marketing	
Forms	Media	00 1914	Polls Staging	- 	Custom tables File import	Blogs	Serum: 🔉 😹 🕺	5 🧧	Message Abuse re	boards port	Projects	Events
		Co	ontent				Com	nuni	ty		Collab	oration
Media												
New m	iedia libra											
	ons I	Name	≜ F	olde	r Descriptio	n						
N 🗙	~	Vedia	N	/ledia	Here you c	an find difi	ferent kinds of r	nedia	a files.			

- 2. Enter the following details into the form:
- Display name name of the library displayed on the live site and in the administration interface
- Code name name of the library used in website code
- Description text describing the media library, displayed in the list of media libraries on the live site
- Teaser image upload some image which will be used as a teaser in the list of media libraries
- Folder name name of the physical folder in the file system which will contain the library files; it is located under <web project>/<site name>/media/

Click OK.

Ker CMS	Desk Content My desk	Tools Administration	E-commerce On-line	<u>Live Site</u> marketing	Site Manager Community site 💌
Forms Med	a Staging Content Content	Blogs & Groups Com	S 🙆 Message boards S 💽 Abuse report munity	Projects Events Collaboration	Newsletters Web analytics Marketing & Reports
> Media librarie	See ➤ New media library				
Display name: Code name: Description:	My first media library MyFirstMediaLibrary This is my first media li	brary.			
Teaser image:	Upload: C:\Users\davidba\Deskto	Browse			
Folder name:	my_first_library OK				

3. You will be redirected to the media library management interface, which is also accessible by clicking the Edit (\checkmark) icon in CMS Desk -> Tools -> Media libraries.

First, we will define the folder structure. Select the root of the tree and click the **New folder** () icon. Enter the name of the new folder and click **OK**. Repeat the procedure so that you have at least two different folders in the library.

Please note: due to ASP.NET architecture, site restart occurs whenever a folder is moved, renamed or deleted. To prevent this, it is a good practice to define the library structure when creating it and not to modify it when the site is already running.

Content My desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line	<u>Live Site</u> marketing		
Forms Polls Custom tables Media Staging File import Content Community	Projects Events Collaboration		
Media library properties			
> Media > My first media library			
Files General Security			
New folder List Tiles	ails		
Relete COPY Move Name:	Search		
my_first_library (0) Sew folder - Windows Internet Explorer			
Attp://127.0.0.1/KenticoCMS4244/CMSModules/MediaLibrary/FormControls/Selectors,			
🙀 New folder			
Folder name: photos_from_europe			
ОК	Cancel		

4. Now we can upload the files. Select one of the folders and click the **New file** (\square) icon at the top right corner.

The **Choose file** dialog appears, letting you choose a file from your local disk. Select some image and click **Open**. Repeat the procedure so that you have several files in both folders.



5. Our media library is now finished and we can publish it. Switch to **CMS Desk -> Content -> Edit -> Design** tab and choose the **Media** page from the content tree. Choose to **Configure** () the **MediaGallery** web part.



6. In the web part properties window, select your new media library in the **Media library** drop-down list and click **OK**.

Content		
Media library*:	Media (current media library)	
Path:	Media My first media library	
Show subfolders content:	• 🗸	
Display file count:		

7. If you switch to the live site now, you should see that the original media library has been replaced by your new media library.
Part 1 73



Further steps: You have created a new media library, defined its structure, uploaded some files and published it on the live site instead of the original sample media library. As obvious, you can publish only one global media library this way. This might be fine for many sites, but if you want to have more global media libraries published on the site, go to the <u>next chapter</u> where you can find more information on how to achieve this functionality.

2.6.3 Publishing more than one global media library

In the following example, you will learn how to publish more than one global media library on the site. We will try to achieve a functionality similar to group media libraries (see **Groups -> Czech Republic** fans and click **Media** in the **Group links** box). As you can see, we have two pages where a list of available libraries is on the first page. Links in the list lead to the second page where the content of the clicked library is displayed dynamically.

1. Go to **CMS Desk -> Content -> Edit** and select the **Media** page from the content tree. Click the **New** icon above the content tree to create a new page under the **Media** page.



2. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type. For **Page name**, enter **Media gallery** and choose the **Community site -> Community site - Media** page template. Click **Save**.



3. Now we have two pages showing the same content because they use the same page template. But the required functionality is the following: the **Media** page should display a **list of global media**

libraries; after clicking a library, users should be redirected to the **Media gallery** page, which shall display the **content of the clicked library**.

First, select the **Media gallery** page and switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab. Select the **Select inherited levels** radio-button and choose to inherit from **Root** only. Click **Save**.



4. Switch to the **URLs** tab and enter /*Media*/{*LibraryName*} into the **Document URL path** filed. This wildcard URL will ensure dynamic loading of the media library into the media gallery web part (configured to behave like this in step 5). Click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administratio	on E-commerce On-li	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u> Community site ▼ ▲ Glo line marketing	bal
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview View m	Live site List	Search Other	
Home Blogs		Save		
 Media Media gallery Forums 	General URLs Template	Alias Document alias:	Media-gallery	
Groups Group pages Group pages Group pages Group pages Group pages Group pages	Metadata Categories Menu	Document URL path Use custom URL path: Path type:	V Standard URL or wildcard Route MVC	
 b (a) Files b (a) Special pages i Logon page 	Workflow Versions	Path or pattern: Extended properties	Media/{LibraryName}	
Search •	Linked docs Security	URL extensions:	Use custom URL extensions	
	Attachments	Document aliases Add new alias No data found.		

5. For the **Media gallery** web part to load the library dynamically, we also need to tune its **Media library** property. Switch to the **Design** tab and choose to **Configure** () the **Media gallery** web part. Set the value of the **Media library** property to **(current media library)** and click **OK**.

🧉 Web part properties	(Media gallery) - Windows Internet E	plorer	
💏 Web part pr	operties (Media gallery)		Documentation
General Layout			
\lor	Content		
Default	(
Visibility	Media library*:	 (current media library) (current media library) 	
Content	Path:	Media My first media library	E
Upload settings	<u> </u>		
Content transformations	Show subfolders content:	•	
Filter settings	Display file count:	•	
Content filter			
Pager	Display active content:		
Pager design	Icon set name:	•	
No data behavior			
Web part container	Hide folder tree:	▶ □	
HTML Envelope		_	
XALA	Use secure links:	► []	
Time zones			
Partial caching	Upload settings		
	Allow upload:		
Refresh content			OK Cancel Apply

© 2011 Kentico Software

6. Select the **Media** page and on the **Properties -> Template** tab, click the **Clone as ad-hoc template** link. Click **Save**.



7. Switch to the **Design** tab and choose to **Remove** the **MediaGallery** web part.



8. Add (+) the Media Library -> Media libraries viewer web part to the zoneCenter web part zone, to the place of the removed MediaGallery web part. In the web part properties window, choose to Edit the Transformation Name property.

Web part properties	(Media libraries viewer) - Windows Interr	net Explorer
🐗 Web part p	roperties (Media libraries view	wer)
General		
\checkmark	Transformations	
Default	Transformation Name*:	
Visibility	Transformation Name".	Community. I ransformations. Medi Select Edit New
Transformations	AlternatingItem Transformation	Select Edit New
No data behaviour	Name:	
Filter	Separator Transformation Name:	Select Edit New
Pager		
Pager design	Header Transformation Name:	Select Edit New
System settings	Footor Transformation Name:	Colort Edit Now
Web part container	Footer Transformation Name.	Select Edit New
HTML Envelope		
XALA	No data behaviour	
Time zones	Hide if no record found:	
Partial caching		
	No record found text:	No data found
	Filter	
	Chau aroun librarios:	 Imit
Refresh content		OK Cancel Apply

9. In the pop-up window, replace the original transformation code with the following code. The transformation below is the original transformation with the highlighted code added.

This code ensures that library teasers and names will work as links leading to the */Media/{LibraryName}* URL, where *{LibraryName}* will be replaced with the name of the clicked library. This is the URL we have set in step 4 for the **Media gallery** page. Because the **Media library** property of the **Media gallery** web part on the page is set to **(current media library)**, it will display content of the media library from the URL.

Click Save.





10. If you go to the live site now and click the **Media** link in the main menu, you should see the functionality described in the beginning of this chapter. A list of all global media libraries on the site will be displayed. After clicking a library in the list, its content will be displayed.



2.7 Design and styles

80

2.7.1 Changing the header image

Changing the header image is a procedure of a few clicks. You only need an image of the same width as the original image, which is **960 pixels**. For the purpose of this example, you may use the **community_header02.gif**. The file can be found in the attached files package that can be found at http://www.kentico.com/Downloads/CommunityGuide/CommunitySiteGuide_files.zip. Once you have the image prepared, follow these steps:

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the **Files** folder from the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **File** document type.



2. Click the **Upload file** () link and browse for your file on your local drive. Enter some text describing the image if you like and click **Save**.

© 2011 Kentico Software





3. The image is now uploaded, so let's use it on the master page. Select the root of the content tree in **Page** tab and click the **Select...** button at the top left corner of the header image.



4. In the pop-up dialog which opens, select your previously uploaded image from the content tree and click **Select**.



5. Finally, click **Save** to save the changes made to the master page.



6. If you switch to the live site now, you should see the new header image in its full beauty.



Further steps: You have learned how to change the header image on the master page. As you will probably not be satisfied with this level of customization, you can try modifying the site's CSS stylesheet. Like that, you will be able to fully customize the site's design according to your needs. In <u>the next chapter</u>, you can find a simple example showing how the site's CSS stylesheet can be modified.

2.7.2 Modifying the stylesheet

In this example, you will learn how to edit the site's CSS stylesheet. We will follow the <u>previous example</u> and modify the main menu so that it matches the new header image. Any other modifications of your choice can be done to the stylesheet the same way as described below.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Development -> CSS Stylesheets** and choose to **Edit** (*P*) the **Community Site** stylesheet.

Sec. Kentico					CMS Desk
Site Manager Sites	Administration !	Settings Development Tools	Dashboard Licenses	Support Buy	
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures 	CSS sty	ylesheets esheet			
Custom settings	✓ Actions	Display name 🔺	Code name		
 Document types Form controls Talina controls 		Corporate Site	CorporateSite		
Modules		Corporate Site - Mobile device Corporate site printer styles	CorporateSiteMobile CorporateSitePrinter		
Page layouts		My site stylesheet OLD - Corporate Site	MySite OLDCorporateSite		
Relationship names Search engines System tables		Personal Site Personal Site - Blue	PersonalSite PersonalSiteBlue		
Time zones	/×- /×-	Personal Site - Green Personal Site - Red	PersonalSiteGreen PersonalSiteRed		
UI cultures Web part containers					

2. The CSS stylesheet is divided into sections so that you can easily find the appropriate classes. The sections can be quickly accessed by selecting from the listbox on the right. Choose the **Top menu** section. Within this section, you can find all classes defining the appearance of the main menu.

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings	<u>CMS Desk</u> User: 1 Global Adr Development Tools Dashboard Licenses Support Buy	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4248 BETA 🛭 🔮 Sign Out
 Development Countries 	GSS styleshee	t properties	?
CSS stylesheets	> <u>CSS stylesheets</u> > Con	mmunity Site	
Custom settings	General Theme Site	S	
Custom tables	Save 🈂 Check	cout	
Document types Sorm controls	Check out the stylesheet	to the c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS4248.10360\CMSCSSStylesheets\CommunitySite.css file to edit it exte	rnally.
📰 Inline controls			
🚮 Modules	Stylesheet display name:	Community Site	
💦 Notifications	Stylesheet code name:	CommunitySite	
 ■ Page layouts ■ Page templates ■ Relationship names Search engines ③ Tag groups ● Tag groups ● Time zones ● UI cultures ■ Web parts ■ Web parts ■ Web templates ■ Web Kemplates ■ Workflows 	Stylesheet text.	<pre>/*#Nain styles/Top menu#*/ .zoneTopMenu { width 950px; beckground: #fff url(/App_Themes/CommunitySite/Images/topmenu-bg.gif) 1 padding: 0px; margin: 0px; } PagePlaceholder .zoneTopMenu { height: 90px; beckground-color: #BABABA; /* DesignMode .zoneTopMenu .CMSListMenuUL { background: #BABABA url(/App_Themes/CommunitySite/Images/topmenu-bg.gif */ .CMSListMenuUL {</pre>	Group pages User contributions Geoups Home page Logon page Logon page Logon page Main styles Membership top zone Search box Top menu Media library Members Messaging Modal popup My account News page Online members Polla Online temu Registration form Search page Shortouts

3. Replace the text of this section (all classes before the */*#Main styles/Search box#*/* line, which indicates the beginning of the new section) with the code below. Click **Save** to save the changes.

```
/*#Main styles/Top menu#*/
.zoneTopMenu
{
      width: 960px;
      background: #000000;
      padding: 0px;
      margin: 0px;
}
.PagePlaceholder .zoneTopMenu
{
      height: 90px;
      background-color: #BABABA;
}
/*
.DesignMode .zoneTopMenu .CMSListMenuUL
{
      background: #BABABA url(../App_Themes/CommunitySite/Images/topmenu-bg.gif)
repeat-x top center;
}
*/
.CMSListMenuUL
{
      list-style-type: none;
```

```
line-height: 27px;
      font-weight: bold;
      font-size: 13px;
      margin: 0px;
      padding: 0px;
      float: left;
      color: #000000;
}
.CMSListMenuLI, .CMSListMenuHighlightedLI
{
      display: block;
      float: left;
      padding: 0px;
      background: #000000;
}
.CMSListMenuLIlast, .CMSListMenuHighlightedLIlast
{
      background: none;
      display: block;
      float: left;
      padding: 0px;
}
.CMSListMenuLink, .CMSListMenuLinkHighlighted
{
      color: #cccccc;
      text-decoration: none;
      display: block;
      padding: 0px 15px;
      margin-right: 2px;
}
.CMSListMenuLI a:hover, .CMSListMenuLinkHighlighted, .CMSListMenuHighlightedLI a
{
      color: #FFFFFF;
      background: #000000;
      text-decoration: none;
}
```

4. If you switch to the live site now, you can see that the colors of the main menu have changed as defined in the pasted stylesheet code.



Further steps: You have learned how to access, modify and save changes to the site's CSS stylesheet. If you are familiar with CSS in general, it should be no problem for you to fully customize any class of the site's CSS stylesheet and thereby customize the site's design as you wish.





3 Part 2

3.1 Introduction

In this part of Kentico CMS Community Site Guide, you will learn how to create a community site from scratch. Our goal in the following series of step-by-step tutorials will be to create an identical site to the sample **Community Starter site** from the very beginning, so that you can see all the stages of the website development process.

You will learn how to define the site structure, populate the pages with web parts and set the web parts' properties to achieve the required functionality. Finally, you will make some settings to specify pages with certain special functionalities.

Here are some things to keep on mind when reading the tutorials in order to get the most out of them:

- These tutorials are intended for web developers with at least the basic knowledge of Kentico CMS. If you are new to Kentico CMS, please read at least the portal engine version of <u>Kentico CMS Tutorial</u> to get familiar with the basics of the system.
- Most of the code examples are self-explaining for people with a certain knowledge of HTML, CSS and transformations, so they are therefore not always commented. It is therefore highly recommended that you have a solid understanding of these languages.
- The most important part of the tutorials are the **web part properties settings**. Because it would take many times as much space to describe all the settings in detail, some of them are just listed without further explanation. The good thing is that when you click the **Documentation** link at the top right corner of each web part properties window, you get detailed explanation of each of the properties directly within the application interface.

Part 2	89

General					
1	Content filter				
Default	Document types:	► cms blogpost	Select	Clear	
/isibility	Document (jpc3.	, ems.biogpost	Univer	ologi	
Content		Nec Vec			
Content filter					
Transformations	Combine with default culture:	▶ () N0			
aging		Ose site settings			
Relationships					
System settings	Culture code:	•	Select	Clear	
No data behavior					
Editing buttons	Maximum nesting level:	• -1			
Web part container	ORDER BY expression:	BlogPostDate DESC			
ITML Envelope	CADER DI CAPICIAION.	. Biogr datbate bedo			
XALA	Select only published:	•			
îme zones					
Partial caching	Select top N documents:	▶ 6			
	014		Salact	Cloar	

After clicking the link, you get the web part's documentation with all the properties explained.

Occumentation - Windows Int	ternet Explorer)	x
Documentation			
Documentation Properties			
Default		Θ	
Web part control ID:	Serves as an identifier for the web part. This ID must be unique within the context of each page template. The value of this property may only contain alphanumeric characters and the underscore character (_).		ш
Web part title:	Title of the web part displayed on the Design tab of CMS Desk. If empty, the value of the Web part control ID property is used for this purpose.		
Disable view state:	Indicates if view state should be disabled for this web part.		
Disable macros:	If checked, macros contained in the values of the web part's properties will no longer be resolved.		
Visibility		⊟	
Visible:	Indicates if the web part should be displayed.		
Hide on subpages:	Indicates if the web part should be hidden on sub-pages. If checked, the web part will not be displayed on documents that inherit the web part from a parent document.		
Show for document types	Contains a list of document types on which the web part should be displayed. If the currently selected document uses the page template containing this web part, but its type is not specified by this property the web part will be hidden. The document types in the list must be specified by their code names and separated by semicolons (;). If empty, the web part will be displayed on all document types.	,	
Display to roles:	Contains a list of roles to which the web part should be displayed. This may be used to implement documents with specific functionality for different types of users. The roles in the list must be specified by their code names and separated by semicolons (;). If empty, the web part will be displayed to all users.		
Content		Θ	
Path:	Specifies the path of the documents that should be selected. If empty, the path will be set to all child documents under the page on which the web part is placed.		
Data source name:	In order to display documents provided by a data source web part, its Web part control ID must be entered into this property. The data source web part must be placed on the same page. Only the Documents data source may be connected to this web part.		Ŧ
•	m	Þ	•
	Cio	se	

• Other valuable information can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide</u>. References to this reference guide can be found throughout the tutorials. In addition, going through the particular modules' chapters can enrich your knowledge and understanding of the system too. So for example if you don't understand something related to **Groups**, just open the **Module Groups** chapter of the guide and see if you can find the answers.

Wildcard URLs are used throughout the whole website, mainly in the Groups section and on user profiles. If you are not familiar with the wildcard URLs concept, please read <u>this chapter</u> of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

• Last but not least, Kentico CMS is well-known for its outstanding **technical support**. So if you get really stuck, don't hesitate and contact our support team at http://www.kentico.com/Support.aspx. They are always there to help you.

3.2 Pre-development tasks

3.2.1 Creating the site

To get us started, we need to create a new website. This can be achieved using the **New site wizard**. You can access it both when making new installation and when you already have Kentico CMS installed.

• When making a new installation, you can choose **Continue to the New site wizard** in **Step 4** of the **Database Setup**. After clicking **Next**, you will be redirected to the first step of the wizard.



• Alternatively, if you already have Kentico CMS installed, you can access the **New site wizard** by clicking the alike named link in **Site Manager -> Sites**.

Kentico Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support
Sites								
New site wizard	nport site or objects	Export object	<u>'s</u>					

1. In the first step of the wizard, choose Create a new site using a wizard and click Next.

92 Kentico CMS 6.0 Community Site Guide

Step 1	Choose default website If you choose to create a blank site, the wizard will guide you through the process of creating a new site. If you choose to use a template, you will be able to choose one of the predefined website templates.	
 Create a new site Use website temp 	using a wizard plate	
		Next >

2. In the second step, enter the following details:

- Site display name: My Community Site
- Site code name: MyCommunitySite
- Domain name: localhost
- Site culture: English United States

Click Next to proceed.

93

Step 2	Enter new site settings Enter the display name and code name of the website. The Domain field must contain the domain that you will use to access the website during development (you may change it when the site goes live). The default culture s the main language of the website.	
Site display name:	My Community Site	
Domain name:	localhost	
Site culture:	English - United States	
	< Previous	Next >

3. In Step 3, leave all settings at their default values and click Next.

Step 3 Objects select ob	tion iects which should be imported.	
 All objects Website Documents Administration Settings Settings Development Global objects Tools Administration Development Development 	Please note: The import process may overwrite your existing objects. The existing objects are marked with * and will be overwritten if checked. Please select the object type from the tree if you wish to change the default selection. Click Next to start the import of selected objects. Global selection Load default selection Select all objects Deselect all objects	E
	Import settings Assign all objects to the imported site (recommended) Run the site after import Delete incomplete site when import fails Do not import objects where parent object is missing Import tasks (recommended) Import files (recommended) Import global folders Import accombly files Arevious Next >	

4. An import log will be displayed. When it finishes, you will be redirected to the following step.

Step 4 Import progress Objects are being imported.		
Importing 'Roles' objects Importing 'Website' objects Importing 'Settings' objects Importing 'Settings categories' objects		
Objects are being imported	< Previous Cancel	Next >

5. In Step 5, you can choose from three default master page layouts. Choose the **Blank master page**, as we will define the layout later on.

Part 2	95

Step 5 Se The any	lect master page e master page defines the layout of the main menu, logo and content placeholders. You can change it at r time later.
Blank master page	Blank master page Generic default page template.
	Top logo and left menu Master page template with logo on the top and menu on the left side.
	Top logo and menu Master page for the Sample web site.
	Next >

6. The sixth step of the wizard allows you to define basic site structure. As we will create the pages when creating the particular sections, you can skip this step by clicking the **Next** button.

Step 6 Defin must 1	basic site structure le site map of your new website. The pages you create will be displayed in the site menu. Each page re a template specified or it can inherit page template from the parent page.	
New Delete Up Content management		
Wy Community Site	Page name: Page template: Blank master page Select OK	
	Next >	

7. If you have reached the seventh step, you have created the site successfully. Click **Finish** to return to **Site Manager -> Sites**.

Step 7 The website has been created successfully Now you can view and edit your new website.	
Edit your new website If this is your first website, the default user account is administrator without password.	
	Finish

3.2.2 Assigning the CSS stylesheet

Once you have the site created, you can create its CSS stylesheet and assign it to the site. For the purposes of this guide, you should use the **CommunitySite.css**, which is the Community Starter site's original CSS stylesheet. The file can be found in the attached files package that can be found at http://www.kentico.com/Downloads/CommunityGuide/CommunitySiteGuide files.zip.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Development -> CSS Stylesheets** and click the **New CSS stylesheet** link at the top of the page.

Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development	Tools Dashboard Lice	nses Support Buy					
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures 	CSS stylesheets								
Custom settings	- Actions	Display name 🔺	Code name						
Document types	2×-	Corporate Site	CorporateSite						
Form controls Inline controls Modules	/ ₩ -	Corporate site printer styl	les CorporateSitePrinter						

- 2. Enter the following details:
- Stylesheet display name: My community site
- Stylesheet code name: MyCommunitySite
- Stylesheet text: copy and paste the stylesheet text from the CommunitySite.css file

Leave the Assign to website My Community Site check-box checked and click OK.

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings	<u>CMS Desk</u> User: ± Global Administrator ▼ v6.0.4248 BETA Development Tools Dashboard Licenses Support Buy	🔮 Sign Out
 Development Countries 	Vew CSS style	sheet	?
 ✓ CSS stylesheets ⊕ Cultures ✓ Custom settings ∰ Custom tables Document types ✓ Form controls 	<u>CSS stylesheets</u> Nev Stylesheet display name: Stylesheet code name:	CSS stylesheet My community site /*#Global#*/	
 Inline controls Modules Notifications Page layouts Page tayouts Relationship names Search engines System tables 	Stylesheet text:	<pre>body font-family: Tahoma, Arial, Verdana; font-size: llpx; } body.LTR, body.RTL { background: #58558 url('/App_Themes/CommunitySite/Images/main-bg.gif') repeat-x top left; padding: Opx; margin: Opx; }</pre>	
 Yay groups Yay groups Yay groups UI cultures Web part containers Web parts Web templates Widgets Workflows 		a { color: #000000; } pre { {	62 / 4163
		C assign to website My Community Site	

3. Go to Site Manager -> Sites and choose to Edit () your site.

Kentico Site Manager	es Administration	Settings	Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
Sites								
Mew site wizard 🔀 Import si	te or objects 📑 Ex	port objects						
- Actions	Site name 🔺							
🖉 🏹 💽 🕨 🖶 🏤 🛛 My Community site								
-								

4. On the **General** tab, select the new stylesheet in both **Site CSS stylesheet** and **Editor CSS stylesheet** drop-downs and click **OK**.

Kentico Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
Site propertie	es								
> Sites > My Commun	ty Site								
General Domain alias	es Cultures	Off-line mode							
Site display name:	My Commun	ity Site							
Site code name:	MyCommuni	tySite							
Site domain name:	localhost								
Default content culture:	English - Uni	ted States		Change					
Default visitor culture:	(Automatic)			•					
Site CSS stylesheet:	My community	/ site	-	Edit	New				
Editor CSS stylesheet:	My community	/ site	-	Edit	New				
Site description:	Sample bla	ank web site	1	*					
				~					
	ОК								

You have learned how to create a new CSS stylesheet and assign it to your site.

3.2.3 Creating page templates category

Throughout the process of the website creation, you will create various pages. It is a good practice to store the pages as page templates so that they can be reused later on at some other part of the website, without the need to define the page structure again. For you to keep the page templates organized neatly, it is recommended to create a new page template category where the templates will be stored.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Development -> Page templates**. Select the root of the template categories tree (Page Templates) and click the **New category** link. Enter the following details:

- Category display name: My Community Site templates
- **Category name**: MyCommunitySiteTemplates
- **Category image path**: path to the image which will be used instead of the default category icon in the page template selection dialog; the recommended dimensions are 16x16px, while larger images may cause problems with design of the administration interface

Click OK. Your category is now created and you can save all your page templates for this site in it.



3.2.4 Defining web part containers

Web part containers are elements of the website which can encapsulate web parts. They consist of a HTLM code before the web part and a after the web part. Throughout the website, we will use six different web part containers which we will define in the following example.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Development -> Web part containers** and click the **New container** link above the list.

Kentico Site Manager Si	tes Administration	Settings Develop	ment Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
Yeste Manager Site Manager ✓ Development ④ Countries ④ CSS stylesheets ● Cultures ● Cultures ● Custom settings ● Custom tables ● Document types ● Form controls ● Inline controls ● Notifications ● Page layouts ● Relationship names ● Search engines	tes Administration Web New contra- Actions N X ~ N X ~ N X ~ N X ~ N X ~ N X ~ N X ~	Settings Develop part containers ainer S Display name 4 Black box Black box Content padding Div element Gray box Gray box Search box	ment Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
Tag groups Tag groups Time zones UI cultures Web part containers R Web parts	•						

2. In the New container dialog, enter the following details:

- **Display name**: Community Site Blue Box
- Code name: CommunitySite.BlueBox
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="blueBoxTop"></div>
<div class="blueBox">
<h3 class="blueBoxTitle">{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

• Text after web part:



Click OK.

3. Switch to the **Sites** tab, click the **Add sites** button and add **My Community Site** using the pop-up dialog. Click **OK**.



4. Repeat the same procedure for the following five web part containers:

- Display name: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Code name: CommunitySite.BlueBoxLight
- Text before web part:

<div class="boxBlueLight"> <h3>{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>

• Text after web part:

</div>

- **Display name**: Community Site Gray Box
- Code name: CommunitySite.GrayBox
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="grayBoxTop"></div>
<div class="grayBox">
<h3 class="grayBoxTitle">{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

• Text after web part:

</div></div class="grayBoxBottom"></div>

- Display name: Community Site Orange Box
- **Code name**: CommunitySite.OrangeBox
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="orangeBoxTop"></div>
<div class="orangeBox">
<h3 class="orangeBoxTitle">{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

Text after web part:



- Display name: Community Site Red Box
- **Code name**: CommunitySite.RedBox
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="redBoxTop"></div>
<div class="redBox">
<h3 class="redBoxTitle">{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

• Text after web part:

```
</div>
<div class="redBoxBottom"></div>
```

- Display name: Community Site Red Box Light
- Code name: CommunitySite.RedBoxLight
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="boxRedLight">
<h3>{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

Text after web part:

</div>

You have created six new web part containers. These containers can now be used to encapsulate any web part on the site, using the **Web part container** property. This property is common to all web parts.

3.2.5 Uploading images

We will upload some images that we will use later on. You can find the images in the **images** folder inside the files package attached to this guide, which can be downloaded at <u>http://www.kentico.com/</u> <u>Downloads/CommunityGuide/CommunitySiteGuide files.zip</u>. Please extract the images from the archive into a separate folder on your local disk before you start with the following steps.

1. Go to CMS Desk, select the root of the content tree and click New.



2. As the document type, choose Folder.

*	Kent CMS De	ico esk	Con	tent	My desk	Tools	Administ	ration	E-comm	erce	On-line marketin	<u>Live</u> g
New	Delete Conten	📄 Copy 🌛 Move t manager	nent	Up Dow	n	Edit	Preview View	Live s] site	List	Search Other	
🕘 м	y Comm	unity Site	e •			New	/ docume	ent				
					р	lease sel	lect new do e (menu ite	ocument em)	t type:			
					(<u>Blog</u> ि <u>Fold</u>	er					
						🔊 <u>Link a</u>	n existing	docume	<u>ent</u>			

3. Enter Files as the Document name and click Save.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	Jesk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u> On-line marketing
New Delete Move Delete	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other
My Community Site	Document name: Files	Spell check

4. Now you have the folder ready in the content tree. Select it and click **New**. Choose the **File** document type.



5. Browse into the folder with the images, choose one of them, enter some text describing of the image and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content	ly desk Tools Adn	ministration E-commer	<u>Live Site</u> e On-line marketing	Site Manager My Community Site 💌
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Previ	iew Live site L View mode	st Search Other	
✓ I y Community Site [●] I site [●]	Save	Save and create anoth	er Spell check	
	Upload file:	Actions Update	Name	Size 36 kB
	T File description:	This is the defau	lt header image.	~

6. Repeat the same procedure for the rest of the images in the folder. The result should look as in the following screenshot.

*	CMS Desk Content My o										
	📄 Copy 👚 Up										
New	Delete 🚔 Move 🛛 😽 Down										
	Content management										
- 🛞 M	ly Community Site®										
- 🕤	Files										
	🐱 button_joinnow®										
	🐱 button_signin 🕈										
	community_header_img										
	community_home_img										

3.2.6 Creating a sample poll

In this exmple, you will learn how to create a sample poll that you will publish on the **Home** page <u>later</u> on. More information about Kentico CMS Polls module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -</u> > <u>Module Polls</u>.

1. Go to CMS Desk -> Tools -> Polls and click the New poll link.

sk	Kent	ico								<u>Live Site</u>	<u>Site Manager</u>	My Community	Site 💌
1	CMS De	sk	Content	My desk	Tools	Administration	E-commerce	On-line n	narketing				
	-	S Polls	🛗 Cus	stom tables		🚨 Forums	📋 Message	boards				Reporting	
Forms	Media	🧌 Staging) 🖫 File	e import	Blogs	🖇 🦓 Groups	🧃 Abuse rep	ort	Projects	Events	Newsletters	🛐 Web analytics	;
		Content				Comm	unity		Collabo	oration	Marketi	ing & Reports	
🥟 Po	olls												
Site: My	Commun	ity Site			•								
Mew p													
No data f	ound.												

- 2. Enter the following details:
- Display name: Continents
- Code name: Continents
- Title: leave blank
- Question: Which continent are you planning to visit during your next trip?

Click OK.

CMS Desk Content My desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing Image: Forms Image: Polls Image: Custom tables Image: Polls Image: Custom tables Image: Polls Image: P
Image: Second state of the second s
New poll > Polls > New poll Display name: Continents Code name: Continents Title:
> Polls > New poll Display name: Continents Code name: Continents Title:
Display name: Continents Code name: Continents Title: Which continent are you planning to visit during your next trip?
Question:

3. The poll appears in the **Edit** mode, offering you five tabs where settings can be done. On the **General** tab, enter the following:

• Message after vote: Thank you for your vote.

Click OK.

Kentico CMS Desk	Content My desk	Tools A	Administration	E-commerce	On-line r	<u>!</u> marketing	<u>Live Site</u>
Forms Media	Polls 🔐 Custom table Staging 🕞 File import	es Diogs	🚨 Forums 🍇 Groups	Message Abuse re	boards port	Projects	Events
	ontent		Comm	unity		Collabo	oration
Polls > Continents General Answers	Security View						
Display name:	Continents						
Code name:	Continents						
Title:							
Question:	Which continent as to visit during yo	re you pla our next t	nning A				
Open from:		Now					
Open to:		Now					
Message after vote:	Thank you for your	vote.	*				
Allow multiple choices:			Ŧ				
	ОК						

4. Switch to the **Answers** tab and click the **New answer** link.

*	Kentico	Tala Administration Economican On line	<u>Live Site</u>	Site Manager My Community Site 💌
Forms	Content My desk Polls Custom tables Media % Staging File import	Statistication Profiling Official Commence Offi	Projects Events	Reporting Newsletters
	Content	Community	Collaboration	Marketing & Reports
🥟 Po	II properties			
> Polls >	Continents			
General	Answers Security View			

No data found.

5. Enter Africa into the **Text** field and click **OK**.

*	Kent CMS De	ico ^{sk}	Content	My desk	Tools A	dministration	E-commerce	On-line n	<u>!</u> narketing	<u>Live Site</u>
Forms	Media	Polls	ng 😭 Fil	istom tables e import	Blogs	Section Forums & Groups	Message	e boards eport	Projects	Events
🥟 Po	ll prop	erties				Comm	lancy		Condox	
> Polls >	Contine	nts s Securit	v View							
> <u>Answer</u>	sisver	answer	, view							
्यि <u>New a</u>	answer									
Text: Af	rica OK									

6. Repeat the procedure so that you have all five continents entered as answers.

*		ico	Content Mu	deck Tools	Administration	E-commerce	On-line m	<u>l</u>	<u>Live Site</u>	<u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	
Forms	Media	Polls	Custom	tables Blogs	S Administration Forums Groups Comm	 Message Abuse repondity 	boards port	Projects	Events pration	Newsletters Market	Reporting Web analytics ing & Reports	
Poll properties												
> <u>Polls</u> > General	Contine Answer	nts s Security 🧏 <u>Reset ans</u>	View wers									
- Acti	ons	Text	Count	Enabled								
1	1 🕹 🤊	Africa	0	Yes								
1	ê 🌷 🤊	Americ	ca O	Yes								
1	1 🌵 🤊	Asia	0	Yes								
1	1 🦊 🤊	Austra	lia O	Yes								
1	î 🌷 🤋	Europe	e O	Yes								

3.2.7 Creating the tag groups

Kentico CMS Tags module enables assigning documents with key words for better content-related navigation and search. These key words are called **tags** and they are organized in **tag groups**. There is one tag group called **Content** in the default instalation. We will create two additional tag groups called **Blogs** and **News**, so that blog posts and news can be tagged with tags from separate groups.

More information about the Tags module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module</u> <u>Tags</u>.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Development -> Tag groups** and click the **New tag group** (*4*) link at the top of the page.

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development	Tools Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
 Site Manager Sites Development Countries CSS stylesheets Clutures Custom settings Custom tables Document types Form controls Inline controls Modules Notifications Page layouts Page templates Relationship names Search engines System tables 	Administration Tag gr Site: My Com New tag gr Actions Actions	Settings Development roups munity Site oup	Tools Dashboard		Support	Buy
Tag groups Time zones						

- 2. Enter the following details into the form:
- Display name: Blogs
- Code name: Blogs
- **Description**: This is the group of tags used for blog posts.

Click OK.

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
 Site Manager Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures Custom settings Custom tables Document types Form controls Inline controls Modules Notifications Page layouts Page templates Relationship names Search engines 	Administration Administration New ta Tag groups Display name: Code name: Description:	Settings g group New tag Blogs Blogs This is for bloc OK	group group the group og posts.	Tools	Ligs used	Licenses	Support	Buy
 System tables Tag groups Time zones 								

- 3. Repeat the same procedure and create a tag group with the following details:
- Display name: News
- Code name: News
- **Description**: This group contains tags used for news items.
Click OK.

4. If you go back to the list of tag groups, you should see the **Blogs**, **Content** and **News** tag groups.

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Admir	nistration	Settings	Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
Development Countries Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures Custom settings Custom tables Custom tables Councent types Councent types Councent types Councent types Custom controls Custom contrels Custom controls Custom contro		Tag g My Con New tag g Actions Actions X = X = X = X =	roups						
🚷 Time zones									

3.2.8 Creating the News notification template

There will be the **News** page on the site, where news will be added by content editors or site administrators. On the page, users will have the possibility to sign up for receiving notifications about new news items published on the site. You can find a tutorial on creating the page <u>here</u>.

In this chapter, we will create a notification template. Notification e-mails will be based on this template. More information about Kentico CMS Notifications module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's</u> <u>Guide -> Module Notifications</u>.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Notifications** and switch to the **Templates** tab.

2. From the Sites drop-down list, select My Community Site and click the New template (III) ice	con.
---	------

Kentico Site Manager Sites	Administration Setting	s Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets CUltures Custom settings Custom tables Document types Form controls Inline controls Modules Notifications Page layouts Page templates 	Notification Gateways Template Site: My Community Image: New template No data found.	S Is Site		T			

3. In the next dialog, enter the following details:

- **Display name**: News notification
- Code name: NewsNotification

Click OK.

Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
 Development Countries CSS stylesheets Cultures Custom settings Custom tables Document types Form controls Inline controls Modules Notifications Page layouts Page templates 	Notific Gateways T > Templates > Display name: Code name:	Cations Templates New template News notification NewsNotification OK					

- 4. Switch to the **Text** tab and define the template's text the following way:
- Subject: Community Site News

Enter the following template text into both HTML text and Plain text fields:

Hello,
news item {%notificationcustomdata.newstitle%} has been just published on the Community site. You can see it at {%documentlink%}.
You are subscribed for receiving this automatic e-mail notification. If you no longer wish to receive these notifications, please change your preferences in your user profile at the Community Site.

Click **Save**. The template is ready to be used.



3.2.9 Creating a sample Media library

In the following example, we will create a sample media library. This media library will be global, which means that all site users and visitors will be able to see its content on the **Media** page. We we will create the Media page later on in <u>this chapter</u>.

Detailed information about the **Media libraries module** can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide</u> -> <u>Module Media libraries</u>.

1. Go to CMS Desk -> Tools -> Media libraries and click the New media library link.

		<u>Live Site</u>	Site Manager My Community Site 💌							
Forms Media Staging File import	Tools Administration E-commerce On-line Second Second Se	marketing Rojects Events	Reporting Newsletters 🗃 Web analytics							
Content	Community	Collaboration	Marketing & Reports							
🦸 Media										
New media library										
No data found.										

2. In the following dialog, enter the details listed below:

- **Display name**: My Community Site Media
- Code name: MyCommunitySiteMedia
- **Description**: enter some text describing the media library
- **Teaser image**: you can leave the field blank
- Folder name: MyCommunitySiteMedia

Click OK.

Ke	ntico								<u>Live Site</u>	Site Manager
CMS	Desk	Content I	My desk	Tools Ad	ministration	E-commerce	On-line	marketing		
Forms Med	ia 🥙 Polls	Gusto 👔 🕞 Custo	m tables nport	Blogs	🚨 Forun 🗞 Group	is 📋 Message s 🍺 Abuse re	e boards eport	Rrojects	Events	Newsletters
	Content				Con	munity		Collabo	oration	Marketir
New m	edia library									
> Media librarie	s > New media	library								
Display name:	My Community	y Site Medi	a							
Code name:	MyCommunity	SiteMedia								
	This is the of My Commu	e global unity Sit	media l ce.	ibrary	*					
Description:										
					Ŧ					
Teaser image:	Upload:		(Browse						
Folder name:	MyCommunity	SiteMedia								
	ОК									

3. The media library has been created and you are redirected to the library's editing interface. We will define the folder structure first.

Click the **New folder** button while the root of the library is selected. Enter the name of the new folder into the **Folder name** field and click **OK**.

Repeat the procedure so that you have the following four folders in the root of your library:

- Documents
- Music
- Pictures
- Video

Kentico CMS Desk Content	My desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-	<u>Live Sit</u>	<u>e Site Manaqer</u> Community site 💌
Forms Media Staging Cu Content	ustom tables I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	ds Projects Events Collaboration	Reporting Newsletters Marketing & Reports
Media library properties			
> Media > My Community Site Media Files General Security			
New folder 🛛 🔒 New file	List Tiles Thur	ibnails	
Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system ✓ MyCommunitySiteMedia (0) Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system Image: Weight of the system	Name: There are no files to display. Solution New Folder - Windows Internet Explorer New Folder Folder name: Video	Search Cance	

4. Now that we have the folders ready, we can start uploading some files. We will use files from the **media_library_files** folder inside the files package attached to this guide. The package can be found at <u>http://www.kentico.com/Downloads/CommunityGuide/CommunitySiteGuide_files.zip</u>. Inside the folder, you will find four sub-folders with the same names that you defined in the previous step. Each of the folders contains several files. For the purposes of this example, you don't need to upload them all. Uploading at least one file into each folder will do the job.

There are several ways how you can achieve this. You can find a detailed description of how files can be uploaded into the media libraries in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Media libraries -></u> <u>Uploading files into media libraries</u>.

Here, we will describe how you can upload files via the administration interface:

Select the target folder from the tree on the left and click the **New file** icon at the top right corner of the page. In the pop-up dialog, browse to the folder where your files are stored and click **Open**.

Forms Polis Custom tables Biogs Groups Abuse report Content Content Content Media library properties Image: Security	Kentico CMS Desk Content	My desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site Site Manager</u> Community site 💌
Media library properties > Media > My Community Site Media File General Security Its New folder Name: Search MyCommunitySiteMedia (0) Dester Search Pictures (0) Pictures (0) Video (0)	Forms Media Staging Cus Content	tom tables aimport Blogs & Forums Community	Events Newsletters Web analytics oration Marketing & Reports
Media > My Community Site Media File General Security Image: Security Image: Security Image: Maxe Maxe Image: Maxe Maxe Image: Maxe Image: Security Image: Maxe Image: Security </td <td>Media library properties</td> <td></td> <td></td>	Media library properties		
Files General Security New folder New folder MyCommunitySiteMedia (0) Documents (0) Music (0) Pictures (0) Video (0) New folder IM001775 Desktop Desktop Documents Documents Music Documents Videos	➤ Media ➤ My Community Site Media		
New folder Ist Ist <td>Files General Security</td> <td></td> <td></td>	Files General Security		
	New folder	List Tiles Thumbnails	
 MyCommunitySiteMedia (0) Documents (0) Music (0) Pictures (0) Video (0) Organize ▼ New folder Favorites Desktop Downloads Recent Places IM002595 Downloads Recent Places Documents Music Pictures Videos Videos Videos	🙀 <u>Delete</u> 🎒 <u>Copy</u> 🕞 <u>Move</u>	Name: Se	earch
Network AA-01-PC File name: IM001775	 MyCommunitySiteMedia (0) Documents (0) Music (0) Pictures (0) Video (0) 	Image: Second state Image: Second state <tr< td=""><td> ✓ 49 Search Pictures Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø </td></tr<>	 ✓ 49 Search Pictures Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø

Repeat the same procedure so that you have at least one file in each of the folders. Once finished, the library is ready to be published on the site.

3.2.10 Creating a Smart search index

Kentico CMS Smart search module enables index-based search through the content of your site. For this to work, you need to have at least one index created for your site. This index will contain information about the content of your site and is much faster to be searched than using the standard SQL queries search approach.

Further information on Kentico CMS Search Engine can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -></u> <u>Modules -> Smart search -> Overview</u>.

In this example, we will create a new smart search index and configure it so that it can be used on our site.

1. Make sure that your site is running (in Site Manager -> Sites) and go to **Site Manager ->** Administration -> Smart search. Click the **New index** (A) link.

Kentico Site Manager	Sites Administratio	on Settings Development	Tools Dashboard Licen	ses Support	<u>CMS Des</u> Buy
 Administration Avatars Bad words Badges 	Smart sea	arch indexes			
👼 Banned IPs	- Actions	Display name 🔺	Last rebuild time	Index type	Index status
Categories Categories	/*****	Community site - Default	8/16/2011 11:10:49 AM	Documents	Ready
E-mail templates	/ 🗙 📵 🔻	Community site - Forums	8/16/2011 11:10:50 AM	Forums	Ready
Event log	/ 🗙 📵 🔻	Community Site - Users	8/16/2011 11:10:51 AM	Users	Ready
Integration bus	/ 🗙 🛞 👻	Corporate Site - Custom table	8/15/2011 2:04:27 PM	Custom tables	Ready
Rembership	/****	Corporate Site - Default	8/15/2011 2:04:49 PM	Documents	Ready
Recycle bin	/* 🕷 👻	Corporate Site - Forums	8/15/2011 2:04:49 PM	Forums	Ready
🚨 Roles	∕ 🗙 📵 👻	Corporate Site - Mobile	8/15/2011 2:04:56 PM	Documents	Ready
Scheduled tasks Smart search Smart search	∥¥® ▼	Corporate Site - Users	8/15/2011 2:04:56 PM	Users	Ready
🔚 SMTP servers					

- 2. Enter the following details into the New index form:
- Display name: My Community Site
- Code name: MyCommunitySite
- Analyzer type: Standard
- Index type: Documents

Click OK.

• Assign index to website <your site name>: enabled

Kentico Site Manager	Sites Administ	ration Settings	Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
Administration Administration Avatars Bad words Badges Banned IPs Categories Categories Categories E-mail queue E-mail templates Event log Integration bus Membership Permissions	New set Search index Display name: Code name: Index type: Analyzer type: Stop words:	earch index earch index es > New index My Community Si Documents Standard (Default) OK	ite ie				John	
 ☑ Recycle bin ➢ Roles ⊘ Scheduled tasks ☑ Smart search ☑ SMTP servers 								

3. Now switch to the **Index** tab and click the **Add allowed content** (a) link. Add the following values into the form:

• Path: /%

- **Document types**: leave the field empty
- Including ad-hoc forums: enabled
- Including blog comments: enabled
- Including message boards: enabled

Click **OK**. This ensured that the whole content of the site will be indexed.

Ken Site Ma	t ico nager	Sites Adm	inistration S	ettings	Development	Tools	Dashboard	Licenses	Support	Buy
 Administrati Avata Bad w Badge Banne Catege 	on s ords s d IPs ories gueue	Smart sea General > Item list >	rt search i arch indexes > Index Sites New allowed	My Con Culture	S nmunity Site es Search prev	view				
 E mail E-mail Event Integr Memb Permis Recycl Roles 	templates log ation bus ership isions e bin	Path: Document f Including ad Including bl Including m	ypes: d-hoc forums: og comments: essage board:	/% Leave V S: V	the field empty i	f you wisl	s s h to choose al	elect elect I document	Clear types.	-
C Sched Sched Smart Smart	uled tasks <mark>search</mark> servers				ОК					

4. Now switch to the **Cultures** tab and click the **Add cultures** button. Select the only available culture - **English - United States** and click **OK**.

Smart search indexes	
► <u>Smart search indexes</u> ► My Community Site	
General Index Sites Cultures Search preview	
The changes were saved. These changes require index rebuild. Please click here to rebuild index now.	
The following culture versions are included in the index:	
No cultures selected 🖉 Select cultures Webpage Dialog	×
Add cultures Select cultures	
Site: My Community Site	
Culture name or its part: Search	
Select all Deselect all	
Culture name	
English - United States	
Items per page	10 💌
ок	Cancel

5. Finally, go back to the **General** tab and click the **Rebuild** (S) link at the top. This needs to be done only for the first time. Any further changes made to the site will be indexed automatically.

3.3 Creating the Master page

As we have the site created and the pre-development tasks carried out, we can start defining the master page. The master page is represented by the root of the content tree. It is the page from which all other pages inherit the default content, such as the main menu, header image, etc. Like this, you can avoid laborious adding and setting of these elements for all pages. Instead, you only use them on the master page and all other pages will inherit it.

In **Step 5** of the <u>New site wizard</u>, we chose to use the **Blank master page** page template. This is the most simple master page with two web part zones. As we want the master page to be a bit more complex, we will have to modify its layout.

Further information on master pages can be found in chapters <u>The master page concept</u> and <u>Editing the</u> <u>master page</u> of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. The master page uses the **Blank master page** page template. If you made any changes to the page now, the changes would be reflected on the page template too so that the original page template definition would be overwritten and could not be reused anymore.

To prevent this, you need to save the page as a new page template. We will stick to this practice throughout the whole guide.

Go to CMS Desk -> Edit, select the master page from the content tree and switch to the Properties ->

Template tab. Click the Save as new template link.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	<u>Live Site Site Manager</u> My Community Site 💌 ᆂ Global Administrator esk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode Other
D 🔄 Files	General URLs Template Blank master page Save as new template Categories Menu Workflow Versions Related docs

- 2. In the pop-up window, enter the following details:
- Template display name: My Community Site Master Page
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MasterPage
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the template

Click OK.

🤗 Save as new page template - Windows Internet Explorer					
🚑 Save as new page template					
Template display name:	My Community Site - Master Page				
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite.MasterPage				
Template category:	My Community Site templates				
	This is the master page of My A Community Site				
Template description:					
	v				
OK Cancel					

3. Now we can start making modifications to the page. First, we will re-define the page layout so that we get more web part zones on the page. Switch to the **Master page** tab and replace the original layout in the main text area (within the *<body>* tags) with the following piece of code.

Click **Save** to save the changes.

```
<!-- Top info -->
<div class="zoneTopInfo">
      <cc1:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneTopInfo" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="mainDiv">
<div class="zoneTopMembership">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneTopMembership" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="zoneTop">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneTopImage" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="zoneTopMenu">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneTopMenu" runat="server" />
      <div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
</div>
<div class="zoneMain">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneContent" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="zoneBottom">
      <cc1:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneBottom" runat="server" />
</div>
</div>
```

4. If you switch to the **Design** tab now, you should see that the master page has been populated with several web part zones. The layout is now ready and we can start populating the page with web parts.

Page Design Form Master page Properties Analytics	
▼ / - page template: My Community Site - Master Page	
▼ zoneTopInfo	4
v zoneTopMembership	2
▼ zoneTopMenu	4
v zoneContent	4
v pageplaceholder	
	*

5. Let's start from the top where the logon bar with links to CMS Desk and Site Manager is located.

Click the Add web part (+) icon of zoneTopInfo. In the pop-up window, choose the Text -> Static text web part and click OK.

In the web part properties window, you only need to set the value of the **Text** property. Use the following code for the value:

<div style="border: lpx solid #cecfce;background:#f7f3ef;color:#555555;font-weight :bold;padding:3px;font-size:10px;text-align:center"> Sign in to CMS Desk. Sign in to CMS Site Manager. The default account is administrator with blank password. </div>

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click **OK**. You should see the logon bar appear in the web part zone.

▼ zoneTopInfo	4	Þ
▼ statictext	Sign in to CMS Desk. Sign in to CMS Site Manager. The default account is administrator with blank password.	

6. Let's move on to **zoneTopMemebership**. This web part zone will contain the sign in/out link, link to the current user's private messaging inbox, link to the current user's profile editing page and information about the current user with link to their public profile.

Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Membership -> Sign out button** web part and click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values:

- Show as link: enabled
- Button text for sign out: Sign out
- Show only when authenticated: disabled
- Sign in page path: /Logon
- Return page path: /Home
- Content before: <div class="signOut">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

Click the Add web part (+) icon again, choose the Messaging -> Messaging info panel web part and click OK. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values:

- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Inbox link URL: ~/Members/Management/Messages.aspx
- Show outbox: disabled
- Show new message: disabled
- Content before: <div class="messagesPanel">
- **Content after**: " | </div>" (do not enter the parentheses, these are here to indicate that the string begins with a blank space)

Click OK.

Click the Add web part (+) icon again, this time, choose the Text -> Static HTML web part and click OK. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at their default values:

- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Content before: <div class="myAccountInfo">
- **Content after**: " | </div>" (do not enter the parentheses, these are here to indicate that the string begins with a blank space)
- Text: place the cursor into the text area, click the Source (E) icon on the WYSIWYG editor toolbar

and replace the original HTML code with the following code:

Edit my profile

You will also need to replace the *KenticoCMS_5.5* string with the name of the virtual directory where your Kentico CMS project is located.

Click OK.

Click the Add web part (+) icon again and finally choose the **Membership** -> Current user web part. Click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at their default values:

- Authenticated URL link: ~/Members/{%CurrentUser.UserName|(encode)true%}.aspx
- User text CSS class: userName
- Content before: <div class="currentUser">
- Content after: " | </div>" (do not enter the parentheses, these are here to indicate that the string begins with a blank space)

Click OK.

7. Next on is the **zoneTopImage** web part zone, where the header image should be placed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of this web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable image** web part. Set its following properties, the rest can be left at their default values:

- Image width: 960
- Image height: 148
- Alternate text: Community Site

Click OK.

Now switch to the **Page** tab. The added web part is represented here only by the two link buttons as in the screenshot below. Click the **Select** button of the added web part.



7. In the pop-up window, select the previously uploaded **community_header_img.jpg** and click the **Select** button.

Select image - Windows Internet Explorer	
🛐 Select image	
Attachments Content Media libraries	Web
🫺 New folder 🛛 🔒 New file	List Tiles III Thumbnails
Site: My Community Site	General URL: //KenticoCMS4237.20467//Files/community_header_img.aspx
 Wy community Site* Files* button_joinnow* button_signin* community_header_img* community_home_img* 	Width: 960 Height 148
4	✓ m b
	Select

8. The header image is now at its place. Click **Save** to save the master page.



9. Now we need to populate the **zoneTopMenu** web part zone where the search box and the main menu will reside. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of this web part zone and choose the **Full-text search -> Smart search box** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, the rest can be left at their default values:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Search button text: Search
- Search button CSS class: buttonSearch
- Search textbox CSS class: inputSearch
- Search results page URL: ~/Search.aspx
- Show search label: disabled

Click OK.

10. Let's add the main menu now. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneTopMenu** web part zone again and choose the **Navigation -> CSS list menu** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, the rest can be left at their default values:

- Path: /%
- Document types: CMS.MenuItem;CMS.Blog

- Maximum nesting level: 1
- Render CSS classes: enabled

11. The **zoneContent** web part zone is where content of all the pages will be loaded. To achieve this behavior, you need to have the **Page placeholder** web part in the web part zone. As you can see, the web part has been added to the web part zone automatically, so you can go on to **zoneBottom**.

12. Finally, we will add the **Kentico logo** into the **zoneBottom** web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **General -> Powered by Kentico** web part. Replace the value of the Text property with the following code:

Click OK.

13. And that's us finished with the master page. If you switch to the **Live site** mode now, you should see the page appear as in the screenshot below. The main menu is not visible yet as there are no pages defined. The rest of the page is already at its required appearance. Content of all site's pages will be loaded into the main white zone where the **Page placeholder** web part resides.



3.4 Creating the Search page

In the previous chapter, you have defined the master page. In the ninth step, you placed the **Smart search box** web part next to the main menu and set its **Search results page URL** property to ~/ *Search.aspx*. This is where the user will be redirected after submitting the search request and where the search results will be displayed. On this page, users will also be able to perform full-text search with extended options using the **Smart search dialog with results** web part.

Further information on Kentico CMS Search Engine can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -></u> <u>Modules -> Smart search -> Overview</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Choose the Create a blank page option. For Page name, enter Search and click Save.



3. Switch to the Properties -> Template tab and click the Edit template properties link.



4. In the pop-up Page template properties window, switch to the Layout tab and replace the original

layout with the following code:

Click Save.

Page template properties - Windows Internet Explorer
💐 Page template properties 🔹 😢
> Page templates > Ad-hoc: Search
General Design Layout Web parts Header Documents
Save Check out to file
O Use shared layout Full page (CSS)
Use custom layout
Layout type: ASCX - Layout code: Use the following expression to add a new web part zone: <cms:cmswebpartzone id="zoneTopRight" runat="server"></cms:cmswebpartzone> (ID must be unique) <%@ Control Language="C#" ClassName="Simple" Inherits="CMS.PortalControls.CMSAbstractLayout" %> <%@ Pagister Assembly="CMS PartalControls" Namespage="CMS PartalControls" TagProfix="col" %>
<pre><div class="subcontentDiv"></div></pre>
<pre><div class="zoneCenterHome"></div></pre>
<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenter" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>
<div class="clear"> </div>
三 図 (本 4) 40 (元 4) (1 - 2)
Add CSS styles

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You should see one web part zone named **zoneCenter** on the page, just as you defined by the layout above. Let's add some heading text first. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of this web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. In the web part properties window, set the following values. The rest of the properties can be left at the default values:

• Text: <h1 class="header">Search results</h1>

Click OK.



6. Displaying search results and the search function itself will be achieved using the **Smart search dialog with results** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again and choose the **Full-text search -> Smart search dialog with results** web part. In the web part properties window, enter the following values. The rest of the properties can be left at their default values:

- Indexes: My Community Site (created here)
- Paging mode: Postback
- Web part container: Content padding
- Content after:

Click OK.

From this moment on, if you switch to the Live site, the page should be fully functional. Try searching both using the **Search box** next to the main menu and the **Smart search dialog with results** web part. Use e.g. *community* as the keyword, since this word is included in two previously uploaded images' names and the master page's name. You will get the results as in the following screenshot.

Current user: Global Administrator (administrator) Edit my profile Inbox Sign c	ut
Community Starter site	h
Search results	
Search results	
Search for: community Search mode: Any word Search Search	
community header img	
http://jocalhost/kenticocms/Files/community_header_img.aspx 2/16/2010 3:08:16 PM	
community home ima	
http://localhost/kenticocms/Files/community_home_img.aspx 2/16/2010 3:09:34 PM	
L	
http://localhost/kenticocms/default.aspx 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM	

7. We don't want the Search page to be displayed in the main menu. To prevent this, select the page in **CMS Desk** and switch to the **Properties -> Menu** tab. Disable the **Show in navigation** check-box and click **Save**.

💥 Kentico			<u>Live Site</u>	<u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	▲ Global Administrator
Kentico Content My CMS Desk Content My New Delete Move Down Content management Content view Display Search * Search *	desk Tools Administratic Edit Preview View m Page Design Form General URLs Template Metadata	Instration E-commerce On-line marketing Iew Live site List View mode Other Form Properties Analytics Basic properties Menu caption: Show in navigation: Show in sitemap:		My Community Site	▲ Global Administrator	
	Categories >	Menu actions				
	Workflow	Standard behavior				
	Versions	Inactive menu item				
	Related docs	Javascript command:	mala: alert/hellellu	atum falaa		
	Linked docs	EX8	imple: alert('nello');r	eturn taise;		
	Security	ORL redirection: Exa	amole: http://www.m	vdomainxv.com o	or ~/products.aspx	
	Attachments			,, ,, , , , , , , , , , , ,		

8. Finally, we will save the page as a page template so that it can be reused in the future. This is a good practice to avoid repeating laborious task. Switch to the **Edit** mode and go to the **Properties -> Template** tab. Click the **Save as new template** link and enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Search page
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.SearchPage

- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click **OK**. The page is now saved as a new page template and can be reused when creating new pages with similar layout or content.



3.5 Creating the Logon page

On the Master page, we placed the **Sign out button** web part and set its **Sign in page path** property to */Logon*. This is where the user will be redirected in order to sign in. This can also happen in other cases such as when a user tries to access a section which is available only to authorized users.

The page will provide the sing-in functionality via the **Logon form** web part, as well as the possibility to register for anonymous site visitors, which will be achieved using the **Custom registration form** web part.

Information about the Custom registration form and how you can modify the appearance of the form can be found in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Choose the Create a blank page option. For Page name, enter Logon page and click Save.



3. Switch to the Properties -> Template tab and click the Edit template properties link.



4. In the pop-up Page template properties window, switch to the Layout tab and replace the original

layout with the following code:

```
<!-- Container -->
<div class="logonReg">
<!-- Left zone -->
<div class="zoneLeft" style="width: 50%; float: left;">
<div style="width: 270px; margin: 30px 0px 10px 90px;">
<ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneLeft" runat="server" />
</div>
</div>
</div>
<!-- Right zone -->
<div class="zoneRight" style="width: 50%; float: left;">
<ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneLeft" runat="server" />
</div style="width: 280px; margin: 30px auto;">
<ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneRight" runat="server" />
</div>
</div>
```

Click Save.

Page template properties - Windows Internet Explorer	
Page template properties	?
> Page templates > Ad-bor: Logon page	
r age templates r Autor. Legen page	
General Design Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save Greck out to file	
Use shared layout Full page (CSS)	
Check out the layout to the c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS4237.20467\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\el 021517382cd8.ascx file to edit the layout externally.	b325231-5fa5-406f-bc04-
Layout type: ASCX -	
e unique) <%@ Control Language="C#" ClassName="Simple" Inherits="CMS.PortalControls.CMSAbstractLayout" <%@ Register Assembly="CMS.PortalControls" Namespace="CMS.PortalControls" TagPrefix="cc1" %>	%>
Container	E
<pre><div class="logonReg"></div></pre>	
<pre></pre> <pre></pre> <pre> </pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <</pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre>	
<pre><div style="width: 270px; margin: 30px 0px 10px 90px;"></div></pre>	
<pre><!-- Right Zone--> </pre> <pre>/div class="zonePight" style="width: 50%; float; left;"></pre>	
<pre><div style="width: 280px; margin: 30px auto:"></div></pre>	
<pre><cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneRight" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone></pre>	
017	
注 図 / · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	1 / 16
Add CSS styles	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You should see two web part zones on the page - **zoneLeft** and **zoneRight** - just as you defined by the layout code above. The left web part zone will host the logon form, the registration form will be placed in the right one. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Membership** -> Logon form web part. Set the following properties of the web part, the rest can be left at their default values:

- Default target URL: ~/Home.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Sign in
- Content before: <div style="min-height: 160px;height:auto">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

6. User registration will be achieved using the **Custom registration form** web part. This web part has no default appearance - the way it will look like is defined by an **alternative form** of the **cms.user** system table. We will use the pre-defined **Registration form** alternative form. However, you can customize the alternative form according to your needs, as described <u>here</u>, or even create your own form a similar way.

First, click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneRight web part zone and choose the Membership - > Custom registration form web part. Set the following properties of the web part, all other properties can be left at their default values:

- Alternative form: cms.user.RegistrationForm
- Redirect to URL: ~/Members/{%CMSContext.CurrentUser.UserName%}.aspx
- Registration error message: There was an error during registration. Please see details below.
- E-mail confirmation page: ~/Special-pages/Registration-approval.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Join the community

Click OK.

7. If you switch to the Live site mode, you should see the following appearance of the page.

	Current user: Global Administrator (administrator) Edit my profile Inbox Sign out
Community Starter site	Search
Sign in	Join the community
User name:	User name:
Password:	First name:
Remember me	Last name:
Log on	Email:
Forgotten password	Password:
	Confirm password:
	Gender: O Male Female
	Register



Kentico

- Document alias: Logon
- Document URL path: /Join

Click Save.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	desk Tools Administrati	on E-commerce On-lir	<u>Live Site</u> ne marketing	<u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	👤 Global Administrator 🔻
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview View n	Live site List	Search Other			
 Siles 	Page Design Form	Properties Analytics				
Logon page	\checkmark	E Save				
Search •	General					
	URLs >	The changes were saved.				
	Template	Alias				
	Metadata	Document alias:	Logon			
	Categories	- Document URL path -				
	Menu	Use custom URL path:				
	Workflow	Path type:	Standard URL or will	dcard 💿 Route	MVC	
	Versions	Path or pattern:	/Join			
	Related docs					
	Linked docs	Extended properties				
	Security	URL extensions:	Lice sustem LIRL ext	oncione		
ļ	Attachments		- USE CUSION ORL EXI	ensions		

9. We don't want the Logon page to be displayed in the menu. Go to the **Properties -> Menu** tab and disable the **Show in navigation** check-box. Click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administrat	ion E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	单 Global Administrator		
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview	Live site List Search mode Other					
 My Community Site Files Logon page Search 	Page Design Form	Properties Analytics					
	General URLs Template Metadata	Basic properties Menu caption: Show in navigation Show in sitemap:					
	Menu > Workflow	Menu actions Standard behavior Inactive menu item 					
	Related docs Linked docs	 Javascript command: Example URL redirection: 	e: alert('hello');return false;				
	Attachments	Example	e: http://www.mydomainxy.com c	or ~/products.aspx			

10. Finally, we will save the page as a page template for further re-usability. Go to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Logon Page
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.LogonPage
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK.



3.6 Creating the Home page

In this chapter, you will see how to create the Home page. This is the initial landing page - the page that the site visitors will see at first when they enter the URL of your site into the browser. It is important to set the alias path of this page in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Content -> Default alias path**, as described <u>here</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Choose the Create a blank page option. For Page name, enter Home and click Save.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	<u>Live Site Site Manager</u> My Community Site 🔽 ᆂ Global Administrator desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing						
Image: New Delete → Move ↓ Down	Edit Preview Live site List Search						
 ✓ J My Community Site ● ▷ Siles ● 	Save and create another Solid check						
Logon page Search	Page name: Home						
Use existing page template Use parent page template Create a blank page with layout Create a blank page							
	The new page will use new ad-hoc page template with an empty layout.						

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link.



4. In the pop-up **Page template properties** window, switch to the **Layout** tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

```
<div class="subcontentDiv">
<div class="zoneCenterHomePage">
<div class="centerLeft">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenterLeft" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="centerRight">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenterRight" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
<div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
<div class="centerHome">
        <div class="left">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenterBottomLeft" runat="server" />
        </div>
```

```
<div class="right">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenterBottomRight" runat="server" />
        </div>
        <div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
</div>
</div>
</div>
</div class="zoneRight">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneRight" runat="server" />
</div>
</div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
</div</div>
```

Click Save.

🤮 Page templa	te properties - Windows Internet Explorer				
🄰 Page	template properties		?		
> Page templ	ates > Ad-hoc: Home				
General De	sign Layout Webparts Header Documents				
Save	Check out to file				
🔘 Use sha	red layout Full page (CSS)				
Ose cust	om layout				
Check out th 45535a0a2 Layout type:	a layout to the c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS4237.20467\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\140 036.ascx file to edit the layout externally. ASCX	142e4t-87t3-	44b5-ad39-		
Lavout code:	Use the following expression to add a new web part zone: <cms:cmswebpartzone id="zoneTopRight" ru<="" th=""><th>ınat="server"</th><th>/> (ID must</th></cms:cmswebpartzone>	ınat="server"	/> (ID must		
	be unique)				
	<%@ Control Language="C#" ClassName="Simple" Inherits="CMS.PortalControls.CMSAbstradtLayout" % <%@ Register Assembly="CMS.PortalControls" Namespace="CMS.PortalControls" TagPrefix="cc1" %>	>			
	<div class="subcontentDiv"></div>		<u> </u>		
	<pre><div class="zoneCenterHomePage"></div></pre>				
	<pre><cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenterLeft" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone></pre>				
	<pre><div class="centerRight"></div></pre>		=		
	<div class="clear"> </div>				
	<pre><div class="centerHome"></div></pre>				
	<pre><div class="left"></div></pre>				
	<div class="right"></div>				
	<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenterBottomRight" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>				
			-		
		1 / 2	4		
	Add Coo styles		-		

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You should see an empty page with five web part zones. Let's start with **zoneRight**, where the right side column with various info boxes will be placed. Click the **Add web part** (

+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Logon miniform** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Display to roles: _notauthenticated_
- Logon failure text: Error logging in.
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Sign in

Click **OK**. The next web part to add is the handy **Shortcuts** web part, displaying shortcuts to various actions and sections depending on the current context. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Community -> Shortcuts** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Display Join/Leave the group link: disabled
- Display Friendship links: disabled
- Display Add to contact list link: disabled
- Display Add to ignore list link: disabled
- Display manage group link: disabled
- Display Sign in link: disabled
- My messages path: /Members/Management/Messages
- My friends path: /Members/Management/Friends
- My invitations path: /Members/Management/Invitations
- Sign out path: /Home
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Shortcuts

Click **OK**. Let's go on with the scrolling news. This will be the **Scrolling text** web part set up so that it displays news from the News section. The News section will be created later on in this guide. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Scrolling text** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Path: /News/%
- Document types: CMS.News
- ORDER BY expression: NewsReleaseDate DESC
- Select top N documents: 5
- Transformation: CMS.News.Preview
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%currentsite.sitename|(tolower)%}|cms.news|all
- Width (px): 150
- Height (px): 150
- Script stop time (milliseconds):4000
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Latest News

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click OK.

So now we have a web part displaying the latest five news items. Let's have a similar info box displaying the latest groups. Again, the Groups section is not created yet, but we will get to it later in this guide. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsPreviewList

- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupCreatedWhen DESC
- No record found text: There are currently no groups.
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Latest Groups
- Content after: <div class="clear"></div> <div>View all</div>

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click OK.

One more info box to go. This time, it will be displaying three latest registered site users. Click the Add web part (+) icon again, choose the **Membership -> Users viewer** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList
- No record found text: There are currently no members.
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: UserCreated DESC
- Selected columns: UserID, UserNickName, UserGender, UserDateOfBirth, UserAvatarID, UserCreated, UserName, AvatarGuid
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Latest Members
- Content after: <div class="clear"></div><div>View all</div>

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click OK.

That's us finished with the info boxes in this web part zone. However, we will place the sample poll created in this chapter to the bottom of the web part zone. Click the Add web part (+) icon for the last time, choose the **Polls -> Poll** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Poll name: Continents
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Poll

Click **OK**. That's us finished with the **zoneRight** web part zone. Now we can move on and populate the other web part zones.

6. We will place the **community_home_img.jpg** image, which we uploaded earlier in <u>this chapter</u>, to the **zoneCenterRight** web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Text -> Editable image** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

• Alternate text: Community photo

Click OK.

Switch to the Page tab and click the Select link of the Editable image web part.



Select the file from the content tree and click the **Select** link. Click **Save** to save the content of the page.

Select image - Windows Internet Explorer	r	
🛐 Select image		
Attachments Content Media libraries	Web	
🥁 New folder 🔒 New file	List Tiles III Thumbnails	?
Site: My Community Site	General URL: /KenticoCMS4237.20467/Files/community_home_img.aspx Width: 374 Height 205	8
<)	Select	Cancel

7. The **zoneCenterLeft** web part zone will host the welcome text and links for sing-in and registration. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part and click **OK**. You can left all web part's properties at the default values and click **OK**.

8. Switch to the **Page** tab. Using the WYSIWYG editor, try to achieve the same result that you can see in the screenshot below. You can find detailed description of the WYSIWYG editor's capabilities in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Content management -> WYSIWYG editor</u>. However, you can see the controls that you will use highlighted in the screenshot.

You will need to write the heading and change its **Format** to *Heading 1*. Then you will need to add a table with one row and two columns. Set the **Border size** property of the table to 0. You will insert the images into the table. Then you will select each of the images and add a hyperlink to the **Logon page** to it. Then you will have to select both of the images in the table and choose the center alignment. Finally, you will have to type the remaining text and set its **Format** to *Normal*.



9. Two web part zones are remaining. In the **zoneCenterBottomLeft**, we will place a repeater displaying extracts from the latest blog posts. The **Blogs** section from that the extracts will be displayed will be created later in this guide. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.BlogPost
- ORDER BY expression: BlogPostDate DESC
- Select top N documents: 6
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.HomeBlogPostsCenter
- Cache dependencies: nodes [{%CurrentSite.SiteName ((tolower)%] cms.blogpost all
- No record found text: There are currently no posts.
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Latest blog posts

Click OK.

10. Last but not least, we will place a similar repeater to the **zoneCenterBottomRight** web part zone. This repeater will be displaying latest forum posts. The **Forums** section will be created later in this guide. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Forums** -> **Forum posts viewer** web part and click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Disable view state: enabled
- **Top N**: 6

- Order by: PostTime DESC
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Latest forum posts

Click OK.

11. You have just finished creating the **Home** page. Most of the web parts are not displaying any content because the related sections of the web are not created yet. However, as you will be creating these sections further in this guide, you will see the related content appear on the home page. In the **Design** tab, the page should look as in the following screenshot.



12. The last step is to save the page as a page template for further reusability. Switch to the Properties
- -> Template tab and click the Save as new template link. Enter the following details:
- Template display name: My Community Site Home page
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.HomePage
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK.



3.7 Creating a starter page template

Many pages on the site will have the same layout and contain the same web parts. To prevent repeating the same development tasks again and again, it is a good practice to create a starter page template. This template will contain the required layout with two web part zones and three web parts - **Editable text** for heading in **zoneLeft** web part zone and the **Logon mini form** and **Shortcuts** web parts in **zoneRight** web part zone.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Choose the **Create a blank page** option. For **Page name**, enter *starter page template* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the Properties -> Template tab and click the Edit template properties link.



4. In the pop-up window, switch to the Layout tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

```
<div class="subcontentDiv">
<div class="zoneCenterHome">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenter" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="zoneRight">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneRight" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
</div>
```

Click Save.

<i>e</i> Page template	te properties - Windows Internet Explorer
<i>灣</i> Page t	template properties ?
Page templat	ates > Ad-hoc: starter page template
General Des	sign Layout Web parts Header Documents
Save (Check out to file
🔘 Use share	ed layout Full page (CSS)
Ose custo	om layout
Layout type: Layout code: U	ASCX we to ealt the layout externally. ASCX Use the following expression to add a new web part zone: <cms:cmswebpartzone id="zoneTopRight" runat="server"></cms:cmswebpartzone> (ID must be unique)
م م	<%@ Control Language="C#" ClassName="Simple" inherits="CMS.PortalControls.CMSAbstractLayout" %> <%@ Register Assembly="CMS.PortalControls" Namespace="CMS.PortalControls" TagPrefix="cc1" %>
	<div class="subcontentDiv"> <div class="zoneCenterHome"> <cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenter" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone> </div> <div class="zoneRight"> <cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneRight" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone> </div> </div> <div class="clear"> </div>
	E 函 ▲ ● ● E 詳 Add CSS styles

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You can see a page layout with two web part zones - **zoneCenter** and **zoneRight**. This layout is common to many of pages that we will create on the site. In the **zoneCenter** web part zone, all of the pages will contain a heading, provided by the **Editable text** web part. We will

add the web part now. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Editable region type: Text box
- Content before: <h1 class="header">
- Content after: </h1>

Click OK.

6. In the zone **zoneRight** web part zone, two web parts will be common to all the pages. The first of them will be the **Logon mini form**. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Logon mini form** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Display to roles: _notauthenticated_
- Logon failure text: Error logging in.
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Sign in

Click OK.

7. The next web part common on all the pages is the handy **Shortcuts** web part, displaying shortcuts to various actions and sections depending on the current context. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Community -> Shortcuts** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties. Leave the rest of the properties at the default values:

- Display Join/Leave the group link: disabled
- Display Friendship links: disabled
- Display Add to contact list link: disabled
- Display Add to ignore list link: disabled
- Display manage group link: disabled
- Display Sign in link: disabled
- My messages path: /Members/Management/Messages
- My friends path: /Members/Management/Friends
- My invitations path: /Members/Management/Invitations
- Sign out path: /Home
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Shortcuts

Click OK.

When you are finished, the page in **Design** tab should look as in the following screenshot.

149

/Home/sasda - page template: _StarterTemplate	
 ▼ zoneCenter ➡ editabletext () 	▼ zoneRight
	Shortcuts
	My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group
	<u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign Out</u>

8. We will save the page template so that it can be reused later. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details into the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: StarterTemplate
- Template code name: StarterTemplate
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: enter some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administrati	ion E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	👤 Global Administrator 🔻	v6.0.4237
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview View r	Live site List Search Other				
 Wy Community Site Files Home Logon page Search Starter page template 	Page Design Form General	Properties Analytics Image: Save Image: Save Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Image: Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Image: Image: Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Image: Image: Image: Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Image	Save as new page templa Save as new page templa Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	Select ate - Windows Internet Explorer age template StarterTemplate StarterTemplate My Community Site templates This is the starter p of My Community Site used as the starter g development of many p site.	s v page template . It will be point for pages in the v	

9. As the page template is now saved, we do not need the page created in this chapter anymore. **Delete** the page from the content tree. The page template will remain saved and can be used in the future.



3.8 Creating the Blogs section

3.8.1 Creating the Blogs page

In this part of the guide, we will create the Blogs section. This section will allow users to read blog posts from any number of blogs. Users will also be able to create a new blog directly on the site, as well as add new blog posts.

Most of this functionality is is achieved using the User contributions module web part. For more information about the module, please refer to <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module User</u> <u>contributions</u>.

Detailed information about the Blogs module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module</u> <u>Blogs</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

*	Kentic CMS Desk	•	Content	My desk	Tools	Administrat	tion E-com	merce On	-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u>
New	Delete Content m	Copy Move	1 Up Up Down	n	Edit	Preview View	Live site	List	Search Other	
	y Commun Files® Home® Logon pa Search®	ity Site®		P (lease seld	docume ect new doo e (menu ite er n existing c	nt cument type m)	e:		

2. We will use the starter page template created in <u>this chapter</u> as the starting point for this page. Choose the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate**. For **Page name**, enter *Blogs* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	Live Site Site Manager My Community Site 🔽 🛋 Global Administrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 😭 😒 On-line marketing	sign Out Ig Solution
New Delete Move Down Content magement	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other Other	?
 ► We commany site ► Files ► Home ■ Logon page ■ Search 	Save and create another Page name: Blogs Use existing page template Use p	Spell check arent page template Create a blank page with layout Create a blank page	?
	All page templates All page templates Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce F-	Template name: Search StarterTemplate Wy Community Site - Home page My Community Site - Logon Page My Community Site - Master Page My Community Site - Search page My Community Site - Master Page My Community Site - Master Page	
	< Þ	_StarterTemplate This is the starter page template of My Community Site. It will be used as the starting point for development or pages in the site.	f many

3. Go to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Blogs
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Blogs
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. On the same tab, click the **Edit template properties** link. In the pop-up **Page template properties** window, switch to the **Layout** tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

```
<div class="subcontentDiv">
<div class="zoneCenterBlog">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenter" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="zoneRight">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneRight" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
</div>
```

Click Save.

Page template properties - Windows Internet Explorer
Page template properties
> Page templates > My Community Site - Blogs
General Design Sites Scopes Layout Theme Web parts Header Documents
Save a Check out to file
Use shared layout Full page (CSS)
Use custom layout
Layout type: ASCX Layout code: Use the following expression to add a new web part zone: <cms:cmswebpartzone id="zoneTopRight" runat="server"></cms:cmswebpartzone> (ID must be unique)
Layout code: Use the following expression to add a new web part zone: <cms:cmswebpartzone id="zoneTopRight" runat="server"></cms:cmswebpartzone> (ID must be unique)
<%@ Control Language="C#" ClassName="Simple" Inherits="CMS.PortalControls.CMSAbstractLayout" %> <%@ Register Assembly="CMS.PortalControls" Namespace="CMS.PortalControls" TagPrefix="cc1" %>
<div class="subcontentDiv"> <div class="zoneCenterHome"></div></div>
<pre><cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenter" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone> </pre>
<div class="zoneRight"></div>
<pre><cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneRight" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone> </pre>
<div class="clear"> </div>
注 [2] / 10
Add CSS styles

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You should see two web part zones - **zoneLeft** and **zoneRight** - just as you defined by the layout above. Let's add web parts to the **zoneRight** web part zone first.

First of all, we will create an RSS feed of blog posts. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Syndication -> Blog posts RSS feed** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Link text: Recent blog posts
- Feed name: blogs
- Feed title: Recent blog posts
- Feed description: Blog posts RSS feed
- Path: /Blogs/{1}/%
- Transformation name: cms.blogpost.rssitem
- Document types: cms.blogpost

Leave defaults for the remaining properties and click **OK**. When the web part is added to the page, drag and drop it up between the *Shortcuts menu* and the *Logon miniform*.

Below the Shortcuts menu, the Tag cloud web part will be displayed. After clicking a tag in the web

part, users will be redirected to the */Blogs/Blog-posts* page, where a list of blog posts tagged with the clicked tag will be displayed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Tagging & categories -> Tag cloud** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Tag group name: Blogs
- Document list URL: /Blogs/Blog-posts
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog;CMS.Menultem
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: Tag cloud

Click OK.

Below the Tag cloud, we will place an info-box displaying links to 3 latest blogs on the site. This will be achieved using the **Repeater** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: rptBlogList
- Disable view state: enabled
- Show for document types: CMS.MenuItem
- Path: ./%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- Select top N documents: 3
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsListRight
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blog|all
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Recent blogs
- Content after: View all blogs

Click OK.

Next on is another similar info box. This one will be displaying latest blog comments. Click the Add web part (+) icon again, choose the Blogs -> Blogs comments viewer web part and click OK. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.BlogComments
- Selected columns: CommentPostDocumentID,CommentDate,CommentUserName,CommentText
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no comments.
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Latest blog comments

Click OK.

The last web part in the right column will be the **Posts archive** web part. This web part will be displaying links to the latest blog months. The web part will not be displayed on this page, but only when a blog, blog month or blog post is displayed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Blogs** -> **Post archive** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: cms.blog;cms.blogmonth;cms.blogpost
- Hide if no record found: disabled

- No record found text: No data in archive.
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Post archive

Click OK.

The **zoneLeft** web part zone is finished. You can see the desired appearance in the screenshot below. Notice that some of the web parts are not displaying any content yet. This is because there is no content to be displayed yet, but when the content is added, all the web parts should work fine. You will see later on in this guide.

▼ zoneRight
▼ logonminiform
BlogPostsRSSFeed BlogPostsRSSFeed Recent blog posts
▼ Shortcuts
My profile Edit my profile
<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u> <u>Create a new group</u> <u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign Out</u>
▼ TagCloud 🍪
▼ rptBlogList
▼ LatestBlogComments
Comments There are currently no comments.
▼ PostArchive 🎯

We will move to the **zoneCenter** web part zone now. First, let's enter the heading text. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Recent blog posts* into the text box representing the web part. Click **Save**.



The heading that we've just added will be displayed only on the title page. When a content of a blog is displayed, the heading will be replaced by breadcrumbs of the same size. These breadcrumbs will be clickable and will indicate the current position in the blogs hierarchy. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Navigation -> Breadcrumbs** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.BlogMonth;CMS.BlogPost;CMS.Blog
- Starting path: /Blogs
- **Document types**: CMS.Blog;CMS.BlogMonth;CMS.MenuItem
- Content before: <div class="blogsTopBreadcrumbs">

• Content after: </div>

Click OK.

Now we have the heading ready, so let's get to the three web parts enabling users to edit blog properties, create blog posts and edit blog posts directly on the live site. As mentioned above, this functionality will be achieved using the **User contributions** module web parts.

The first one will be used for blogs editing. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **User contributions -> Edit contribution** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: EditBlog
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog
- Alternative form name: CMS.Blog.EditBlog
- Edit button label: Edit blog
- Allow delete: disabled
- Content before: <div class="EditPanel">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

The second of the User contributions web parts will be used to enable users edit blog posts. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **User contributions -> Edit contribution** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: EditBlogPost
- Show for document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Alternative form name: CMS.BlogPost.EditBlogPost
- Content before: <div class="EditPanel">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

The last of the three User contributions web parts will enable adding of new blog posts. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **User contributions -> Contributions list** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: NewBlogPost
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog
- Path for new documents: "." (do not include the parentheses, these are only indicating that you should enter the dot only)
- Allowed new document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Alternative form name: CMS.BlogPost.EditBlogPost
- Display list of documents: disabled
- New item button label: New blog post
- List button label: My blog posts
- Allow delete: disabled
- Content before: <div class="EditPanel">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

Now we will add two repeaters with similar settings. The first repeater will be displayed only on Blog month documents and will display a list of all blog posts in the month, paged by 5 posts. Click the Add web part (+) icon again, choose the Listings and viewers -> Repeater web part and click OK. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: rptMonthPosts
- Show for document types: cms.blogmonth
- Path: ./%
- Document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsAllBlogsPosts
- Selected item transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogPostDetail
- Enable paging: enabled
- Page size: 5
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blogpost|all

Click OK.

The second repeater will display a list of 5 latest blog posts on the Blogs title page (the page that you are creating now) and on a particular blog's title page. The repeater will also be used for displaying particular blog posts. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: rptLatestPostsAllBlogs
- Disable view state: enabled
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog;CMS.BlogPost;CMS.Menultem
- Path: ./%
- Document types: cms.blogpost
- Order by expression: BlogPostDate DESC
- Select top N documents: 5
- **Transformation**: Community.Transformations.BlogsAllBlogsPosts
- Selected item transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogPostDetail
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blogpost|all

Click OK.

Three web parts remaining. The next one will be the **Content rating** web part. It will be displayed only for blog posts and will enable users to rate the content of the blog posts. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Content rating** -> **Content rating** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Content before: <div class="blogContentRating">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

The **Social bookmarking** web part will be placed below the Content rating web part and will enable users to bookmark blog posts via a large number of social bookmarking services. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Community services -> Social bookmarking** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.BlogPost
- · Bookmarking services: enable the check-boxes for all social bookmarking services that you want to

be available

• Content after:

Click OK.

The last web part on the page will also be displayed only for blog posts. It is the **Comments view** web part, enabling users to post blog comments and displaying the comments. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Blogs** -> **Comment view** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Check permissions: disabled
- Comment separator: <div class="PostCommentSeparatorLine"> </div>
- Show edit button: enabled
- Enable user pictures: enabled
- User picture width: 66
- User picture height: 66
- Content before: <div class="blogComments">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

In the screenshot below, you can see the desired appearance of the page in **Design** tab. As mentioned above, no content is displayed as there is no content (no blogs, no posts, ...) on the site yet. However, as the site gets populated with content, all web parts should be fully functional.



3.8.2 Creating the Create page

The Create page is where users are redirected when they want to create a new blog. The page is accessible via the **Shortcuts** menu, after clicking the **Create a new blog** link. In the following example, you will learn how to create the page. We will use the **My Community Site - Blogs** page template created in the <u>previous chapter</u> so that we don't have to waste time by adding the same web parts again.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the **Blogs** page in the content tree and click the **New** icon. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Choose the **My Community Site templates -> My Community Site - Blogs** page template. For **Page name**, enter *Create* and click **Save**.

Kentico		<u>Live Site</u>	Site Manager My Comm	unity Site 💌 💶 💄 Global Ad	ministrator 🔻 v6.0.4237	n Sign Out
CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	On-line marketing			📶 Enterprise l	Marketing Solution
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other				?
 ✓ Wy Community Site Blogs → Giles Home Logon page Search 	Save Save and create another Page name: Create Image use of the second	Spell check	te a blank page with layout	Create a blank page	earch	?
	Second Biogs Seco	StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Blogs	My Community Site - Home page	My Community Site - Logon Page	
	Images Images Images Master templates Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News Newsletter Offices Press releases Products Templates with editable regior Witi	My Community Site - Master Page	My Community Site - Search page			
		My Community Sit This is the Blogs page of	te - Blogs My Community Site.			

3. Now we have the Create page created. It uses the My Community Site - Blogs page template. If we

started making modifications to the page now, the page template would also get modified, so that the Blogs page would be modified too. To prevent this, we will have to save the page as a new page template before the actual modification. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Blog creation
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BlogCreation
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Live Site Site Manager My Con ity Site 💌 🔔 Global Administrator Kentico CMS Desk Content Tools 📄 Copy 🛛 👚 Up Q Q Edit Live site List Search New Delete 🛁 Move 👃 Down Preview Content management View mode Other My Community Site[®] Page Form Properties Analytics Design Blogs Save Create[®] 🟐 Files® General Home• Template URLs 📄 Logon page® My Community Site - Blogs Search• Template Metadata Save as new template... __ 0 <u>__</u>X Save as new page template - Windows Internet Explorer Categories Inherit template 👼 Save as new page template Menu Clone template as ad-hoc Workflow Template display name: My Community Site - Blog creation Versions Edit template properties Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BlogCreation Related docs Template category: My Community Site templates • Linked docs Inherit content This is the blog creation page of . Use page template settings Security My Community Site Do not inherit any content Attachments Template description: Inherit only master page Select inherited levels

Click OK. Click Save.

4. Now switch to the **Design** tab. Because the page template already contains some web parts that we will need on the page, we can focus on deleting the not-needed ones first. You can delete a web part by opening the web part's context menu (down-pointing arrow on the left) and selecting the **Remove** command.



From the **zoneRight** web part zone, delete the **Logon miniform**, **Post archive** and **Blog comments viewer** web parts.

5. We will add two more web parts to this web part zone. The first one will be a repeater displaying the current user's blogs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the

Listings and viewers -> Repeater web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Web part control ID: repeaterYourBlogs
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- **ORDER BY expression**: DocumentCreatedWhen DESC
- WHERE condition: NodeOwner='{%CurrentUser.UserID%}'
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsListRight
- No record found text: You have currently no blogs.
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: Your blogs

Click OK.

The second web part that we will add to the **zoneRight** web part zone is the Users viewer. We will set it up so that it displays the four most active bloggers on the site. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **Membership -> Users viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Web part control ID: TopBloggers
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no bloggers.
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: UserBlogPosts DESC
- Select top N members: 4
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Top bloggers

Click OK.

Now that you have the web parts in place and configured, let's just reorder them by dragging and dropping. In the result, they should be ordered as in the screenshot below:



6. In the **zoneCenter** web part zone, we will need only the **Editable text** web part at the top, hence you can **remove all the other web parts** in this web part zone. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Create new blog* into the web part's text box. Click **Save**.



7. Switch back to the **Design** tab. You should see the heading displayed in the appropriate font size. The rest of the **zoneCenter** web part zone will host only another **Editable text** web part displaying some info text and the **New blog** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **Text** -> **Editable text** web part. You can leave all properties of the web part at their default values and click **OK**.

Switch to the **Page** tab and enter some info text into the web part's text area. You can use the following sample text:

You can create your new blog by entering the required details into the fields below. You will be able to change the entered data later. After submitting these details, you will be able to edit your blog's properties or start blogging immediately.

Click Save.

Blogs	Home	
Create n	blog	
You can (submittin	ate your new blog by entering the required details into the fields below. You will be able to change the entered data later. After rese details, you will be able to edit your blog's properties or start blogging immediately.	E

8. Switch back to the **Design** tab. Let's finish the page by adding its main part - the **New blog** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **Blogs -> New blog** web part. Set the following property of the web part, leave the rest at their default values:

• Blog parent path: /Blogs

Click **OK**. You have just finished creating the blogs creation page. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

V /Blogs/Create - page template: My Community Site - Blog creation	D
▼ zoneCenter ▼ editabletext log	 ▼ zoneRight ↓ <
editabletext1 blog by entering the required details into the fields below. You will be able to change the entered data later. After submitting blog is properties or start blogging immediately. NewBlog Blog name:	My profile Edit my profile My messages My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out
Blog description:	▼ repeaterYourBlogs Image: Second secon

3.8.3 Creating the Blog list page

The Blog list page displays a list of all blogs on the site. This functionality will be achieved using the **Repeater** web part. The page is accessible from the **Recent blogs** repeater on the Blogs title page, by clicking the **View all blogs** link.

1. Go to CMS Desk -> Edit mode, select the Blogs page from the content tree and click New.



2. We will use the page template from the previous chapter so that we can save time by eliminating adding some identically configured web parts. Choose the **My Community Site templates -> My Community Site - Blog creation** page template. For **Page name**, enter *Blog list* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab. We will save the page as a new page template so that the modifications made to this page will not be reflected on the Blog creation page. Click the Save as new template link and enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Blog list
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BlogList
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	desk Tools Administrat	ion E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	L Global Administrator ▼ v6.0.4
New Delete Move Up	Edit Preview	Live site List Search			
Content management Content management Wy Community Site® Blogs Create® Greate®	View I Page Design Form General URLs Template View I Metadata Categories Menu Workflow Versions Related docs Linked docs Security Attachments	Interit content Other Other Other Properties Analytics Interit content Interit template as ad-hoc Interit content Other Use page template settings Do not inherit any content Inherit only master page Select inherited levels	ion Save as new page temp Save as new page temp Template display name: Template category: Template description:	Select late - Windows Internet Explore page template My Community Site - Blog MyCommunity Site BlogList My Community Site template This is the Blog lis Community Site.	er Iist t t ss st page of My

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. Let's start with **zoneRight** web part zone. Remove the **repeaterYourBlogPosts** and **LatestBlogs** web parts. These web parts wouldn't make sense in this context, so you can leave them out.

Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **Membership -> Logon mini form** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Display to roles: _notauthenticated_
- Logon failure text: Error logging in.
- Web part container: Community Site Red box
- Web part container title: Sign in

Click OK.

Drag and drop the web part to the top of the web part zone, above the **Shortcuts** box. The web part zone is ready now and should look as in the screenshot below.



5. Modifying the **zoneCenter** web part zone will also be a task of a few clicks. Firstly, remove the **DescriptionText** and **NewBlog** web parts so that the only web part remaining is the **Editable text** for the heading.

- Web part control ID: rptListOfBlogs
- Show for document types: CMS.Menultem
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogPostDetail
- Selected item transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogPostDetail
- Paging: enabled
- Page size: 5
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blog|all

Click OK.

6. Finally, switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Blogs list* into the text field of the heading **Editable text** web part. Click **Save**.



In the screenshot below, you can see the desired appearance of the page in **Design** tab. The page is not displaying anything yet, because there are no blogs on the site. If you create one, it will be displayed here.

	Part 2	167
× /Blogs/Blog list_page template: My Community Site_Blog list		B
▼ zoneCenter ▼ editabletext ▼ rptListOfBlogs	zoneRight zoneRight v logonminif Shortcuts <u>My profile Edit my profile My friendes My friendes My invitations Create a new q </u>	

Sign Out

.

▼ TagCloud ▼ TopBloggers Admin Gender: N/A

Age: N/A

3.8.4 Creating the Blog posts page

The last page in the Blogs section is the Blog posts page. When a user clicks a tag in the Tag cloud web part, they are redirected to this page. On the page, all blog posts will be displayed by the Repeater web part based on a querystring parameter.

1. Go to CMS Desk, select the Blogs page from the content tree and click New. Choose the Page (menu item) document type.



2. We will use the page template of the **Blog list** page created in the previous chapter. The page template is almost identical, only the settings of the main repeater will be modified. Choose the My Community Site template -> My Community Site - Blog list page template. For Page name, enter Blog posts and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My desk Tools Administration E-comm	Live herce On-line marketing	<u>Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u>	4y Community Site 💌 🎩 Glo	bal Administrator ▼ v6.0.4237 .f <mark>.</mark> Enterprise	Sign Out
Image: Copy of Up Up New Delete Move Down Content management View mode	List Search Other				?
✓ ✓	another Spell check				?
Create® Create Solution Create	Use parent page template	Create a blank page with	n layout 💿 Create a blank page	3	
☐ Logon page ▽ 🧐 All page templates ☐ Search 🥘 Articles >> >>	Template name:			Search	
Solution So	no image	no image	no image	ogarni on	
୍ଦ୍ଧି FAQs ଦ୍ଧୁ Forums ଭୁ General	_StarterTempla	ate My Communit Blog creat	y Site - My Community S ion Blog list	ite - My Community Site - Blogs	-
 Home pages Images Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and securi 	ro image	no image	na trage	10 1000	
My Community Site ter News Newsletter	nplates My Community S Home page	ite - My Communit Logon Pa	y Site - My Community S ge Master Page	ite - My Community Site Search page	-
Onces Onces Press releases Products Templates with editable	e regior				
	My Communi This is the Blog lis	i ty Site - Blog list st page of My Communit	y Site.		

3. View the new page in **Page** tab. Enter *Blog posts* into the heading **Editable text** web part's text box and click **Save**.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details into the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Blog posts
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BlogPosts
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



5. Switch to the **Design** tab. There is the **rptListOfBlogs** web part already on the page in the **zoneCenter** web part zone. It is configured for the purposes of the **Blog list** page, so we will have to modify its properties. Click the **Configure** (^(a)) icon of the web part and set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: rptBlogPosts
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog;CMS.BlogPost;CMS.Menultem
- Document types: cms.blogpost
- ORDER BY expression: BlogPostDate DESC
- WHERE condition:

```
({?tagid|(toint)?} = 0 AND '{?tagname?}'='') OR (DocumentID IN (SELECT DocumentID
FROM CMS_DocumentTag WHERE TagID = {?tagid|(toint)?})) OR (DocumentID IN (SELECT
DocumentID FROM CMS_DocumentTag WHERE TagID IN (SELECT TagID FROM CMS_Tag WHERE
TagName = '{?tagname?}' AND TagGroupID = {?groupid|(toint)?})))
```

- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsAllBlogsPosts
- · Selected item transformation: clear the value as it wouldn't make sense in this context
- Cache dependencies: nodes [%CurrentSite.SiteName](tolower)%] cms.blogpost all

Click OK.

The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot:

▼ zoneRight
✓ logonminiform
Shortcuts
Edit my profile
My friends My invitations
Create a new group Create a new blog
Sign Out
▼ TagCloud
▼ TopBloggers
Admin Gender: N/A Age: N/A

3.9 Creating the News page

The News page will contain a repeater displaying news. News items can be created by users with access to CMS Desk, typically content editors or site administrators. They are useful for announcing important information to all site users and visitors.

Creating the News page will be very simple. We will re-use the starter page template created in <u>this</u> <u>chapter</u> and add some web parts, mainly the **Repeater** for displaying news items.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Choose the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** page template. For **Page name**, enter *News* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	unity Site 💌 🎩 Global Adı	ministrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🛛 🚷 Sig 📶 Enterprise Marketing :	gn Out Solution
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other				?
 ✓ My Community Site[●] ✓ Blogs[●] ✓ Blog list[●] → Blog posts[●] → Create[®] > ○ Files[®] 	Save and create another Page name: News Use existing page template Use page template	Spell check	ate a blank page with layout	Create a blank page		?
Home® Logon page® Search®	 All page templates Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce Events 	Template name:	no image	no image	earch nimage	
	 FAQs FAQs Forums General Home pages Images b openings 	_StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Blog creation	My Community Site - Blog list	My Community Site - Blog posts	
	Source Service Se	My Community Site - Blogs	My Community Site - Home page	My Community Site - Logon Page	My Community Site - Master Page	
	 Onces Press releases Products Templates with editable region Wiki 	1 2				
	< <u>III</u> +	_StarterTemplate This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	e starting point for development of r	many

3. View the page in **Page** tab and enter *News* into the heading **Editable text** web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Home			
News				

4. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details into the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site News
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.News
- **Template category**: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Firstly, we will add a tag cloud that will display tags from the News tag group. After clicking a tag, users will be redirected to this page again, where the repeater in the **zoneCenter** web part zone will display all news items tagged with the clicked tag.Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Tagging & Categories -> Tag cloud** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Tag group name: News
- Document list URL: /News
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: Tag cloud

Click OK.

6. Now we will add the **Content subscription** web part to enable users subscribe to receiving notifications about new news items. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Notifications -> Content subscription** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Path: /News/%
- Document types: CMS.News
- Create event enabled: enabled
- Create event display name: Community news notification
- Create event template name: News notification
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: News subscription

Click OK. The zoneRight web part zone is finished and in Design tab, it should look as in the

screenshot below.

▼ zoneRight 🕂
▼ logonminiform
✓ Shortcuts
My profile Edit my profile
<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> My invitations
Create a new group
Create a new blog
<u>Siqii ouc</u>
▼ TagCloud 🚳
▼ ContentSubscription
E-mail:
administrator@localhost.lc
Subscribe

7. Now to the **zoneCenter** web part zone. The main web part will be a repeater displaying the news items. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: NewsRepeater
- Path: /News/%
- Document types: CMS.News
- ORDER BY expression: NewsReleaseDate DESC
- WHERE condition:

```
({?tagid|(toint)?} = 0) OR (DocumentID IN ( SELECT DocumentID FROM CMS_DocumentTag
WHERE TagID = {?tagid|(toint)?} ))
```

- Transformation: Community.Transformations.NewsPreview
- Selected item transformation: Community. Transformations. News Detail
- Show new button: enabled
- New button text: Add news

- Show Edit and Delete buttons: enabled
- Content before: <div class="newsRepeater">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

8. Now let's add the **Breadcrumbs** web part. This web part will be displayed only when a news item is displayed, not in the list of news items. When the News item is displayed, the breadcrumbs will make the heading of the page in format *News* > *Title of the news item*. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Navigation -> Breadcrumbs** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Show for document types: CMS.News
- Breadcrumb separator:

- Encode name: disabled
- Web part container: Breadcrumbs box
- Content before: <div class="blogsTopBreadcrumbs">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK and drag-and-drop the web part between the NewsTitle and the NewsRepeater web part.

9. Finally, we will add the possibility to sign up for RSS notifications about new news items. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Web part control ID: RSSImage
- Text:

```
<br /><a href="~/CMSPages/NewsRss.aspx" style="border:0; padding-left: 10px;
padding-right: 10px;"><img src="~/App_Themes/Default/Images/rss.gif" border="0"
alt="RSS" /></a>
```

Click **OK**. The **News** page is now ready. You can try out its functionality by adding some news items under the News page via CMS Desk. The page should display the news items correctly. In **Design** tab, the page should look as in the screenshot below.

✓ /News - page template: My Community Site - News	Image: A start and a start
▼ zoneCenter 🕂	▼ zoneRight 🔒
editabletext 🚱	▼ logonminiform 🎡
breadcrumbs	▼ Shortcuts @
▼ NewsRepeater 🎲	My profile Edit my profile
RSSImage	My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out
	ContentSubscription F-mail: administrator@localhost.lc Subscribe

3.10 Creating the Media page

The Media page will display content of the site's global media library created in <u>this chapter</u>. As you will see, the page is very easy to create as all the required functionality will be achieved using the **Media gallery** web part.

Further information can be found in the <u>Module Media libraries</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Go to CMS Desk, select the root of the content tree and click New. Choose the Page (menu item)

document type.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-I	<u>Lir</u> ine marketing
New Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search
✓ Wy Community Site ● ▷ Blogs ● ▷ ☆ Files ● Home ●	New document Please select new document type:	
 Logon page● News● Search● 	Page (menu item) Signature Signature Signature Signature	

2. Enter *Media* into the **Page name** field. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** page template and click **Save**.

Kentico	daek Taale Administration E.commerce	<u>Live Site</u>	Site Manager My Commu	unity Site 💌 💄 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🏼 🎲	Sign Out
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
 ✓ My Community Site [●] ▷ Blogs [●] ▷ Given Files [●] Home [●] Logon page [●] 	Save Redia Output Use existing page template	Spell check	ate a blank page with layout	Create a blank page	_	?
Search 9	 All page templates Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce E-commerce Forums General Home pages Job openings Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News Press releases Products Templates with editable regior Wiki 	Template name:	My Community Site - Blog creation	My Community Site - Biog list Number of the second	My Community Site - Biog posts My Community Site - Master Page	
	۲ <u>ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ</u>	1 2 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	starting point for developme	nt of many

3. Now we will save the page as a new page template so that the changes made to the page would not be reflected to the **_StarterTemplate**. Select the **Media** page from the content tree, switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details into the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Media
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Media
- Template category: My Community Site templates

• Template description: enter some text describing the page template

Click OK.



4. The only web part that we need to add is the **Media gallery** web part. Obviously, it will be placed in the **zoneCenter** web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Media library -> Media gallery** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Media library: My Community Site Media
- Show subfolders content: enabled
- Use secure links: disabled
- Page size: 8
- Group size: 8
- No record found text: There are no files in the library.

Click OK.

5. The last step is to change the header text. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Media gallery* into the **Editable text** web part's text field. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Home
Media ga	allery

6. And that's the **Media** page finished. If you switch to the live site now, you should see the page displaying content of the previously created sample media library.



3.11 Creating the Forums section

3.11.1 Creating the Forums page

The forums page will host the site's discussion forums. All the forum content will be displayed by this single page using the **Forum group** web part. In order for the page to display some content, there has to be some forum group defined via the administration interface.

Before you start creating the page, it is therefore recommended to create one forum group. In <u>this</u> <u>chapter</u>, you can see how a sample forum group can be created.

If you needed some more information about the Kentico CMS Forums module, you can find it in <u>Kentico</u> <u>CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Forums</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. In the following dialog, choose the **Create a blank page** option. Enter *Forums* into the **Page name** field and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	<u>Live Site Site Manager</u> My Community Site 💌 £ Global Adr desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Delete A Move Down	Edit Preview Live site List Search
Wy Community Site Dese	Save and create another Schell check
b (a) Files Home Logon page	Page name: Forums
Media Media News Search	The new page will use new ad-hoc page template with an empty layout.

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	lesk Tools Administratio	on E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u>	<u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	💄 Global A
New Delete Move Up Content management	Edit Preview	Live site List Search node Other				
V Wy Community Site	Page Design Form	Properties Analytics				
Files	\checkmark	Save				
Forums Home Logon page Media News Search	General URLs Template Metadata Categories Menu Workflow Varians	Template Ad-hoc: Forums Image: Save as new template Inherit template Edit template properties			Select	
•	Related docs Linked docs Security Attachments	Inherit content Image: Use page template settings Do not inherit any content Inherit only master page Select inherited levels				

4. In the pop-up window, switch to the **Layout** tab and replace the original layout code with the following code:

```
<!-- Container -->
<div class="forumSearch">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneLeft" runat="server" />
</div>
```

Click Save.

Page template properties - Windows Internet Explorer
💐 Page template properties
> Page templates > Ad-hoc: Forums
General Design Layout Web parts Header Documents
Save G Check out to file
 Use shared layout Full page (CSS) Use custom layout
Check out the layout to the c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS4237.20467\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\d7368f32-a229-49eb-b532- 9f2c1c5ebd7c.ascx file to edit the layout externally. Layout type: ASCX •
Layout code: Use the following expression to add a new web part zone: <cms:cmswebpartzone id="zoneTopRight" runat="server"></cms:cmswebpartzone> (ID must be unique) <%@ Control Language="C#" ClassName="Simple" Inherits="CMS.PortalControls.CMSAbstractLayout" %> <%@ Register Assembly="CMS.PortalControls" Namespace="CMS.PortalControls" TagPrefix="cc1" %>
<pre><!-- Container--> <div class="forumSearch"> <ccl:cmswebpartzone id="zoneLeft" runat="server"></ccl:cmswebpartzone> </div></pre>

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You can see only one web part zone on the page, so let's start adding web parts to it. First, we need a heading. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Web part control ID: editabletextHeader
- Editable region title: Header
- Editable region type: Text box
- Content before: <h1 class="header">
- Content after: </h1>

Click OK.

6. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Forums* into the **Editable text** web part's text box. Click **Save**.



7. Switch back to the **Design** tab. Because some forums might be accessible only to authenticated users, we will add the Logon miniform web part below the heading. It will be displayed only to unauthenticated anonymous site visitors. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Logon miniform** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Display to roles: _notauthenticated_
- Logon failure text: Error logging in.
- Username text: username
- Content before: <div class="ForumLogonBox">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

8. Below the logon mini form, the **Forum search box** web part will reside. It will enable users to search in the forum contents. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum search box** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Advanced search path: /Forums/Forum-search
- Context search: enabled
- Content before:

```
<div class="ForumSearchBox">

<b>Search forums:&nbsp;</b>
```

Content after:

</div><div class="clear"></div>

Click OK.

9. Below the Forum search box, we will place the **Forum group** web part. In order for it to display any content, you should have created some sample forum group as mentioned in the beginning of this chapter. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum group** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values:

- Group name: choose your previously created forum group
- Enable favorites: enabled
- Thread view mode: Flat oldest to newest
- Allow private messaging: enabled
- Allow friendship request: enabled
- Access denied page URL: ~/Special-pages/Access-denied.aspx
- Use friendly URLs: enabled
- Friendly Base URL: ~/Forums
- Content after: <div style="height: 15px;"></div>

Click OK.

10. Below the Forum group, we will place the Forum search results. The web part will be displaying results of forum search performed by the Forum search box web part above. Click the Add web part (
icon of the zoneLeft web part zone and choose the Forums -> Forum search results web part. You can leave all properties of the web part at the default values.

11. The last web part on the page is the **On-line users** web part. We will set it up so that it displays the number of users who are currently browsing the forums section. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> On-line users** web part. Set the following properties of the web part:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersOn-line
- Path: /Forums
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Content before:

Click OK.

12. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

▼ /Forums - page template: Community Site - Forums								
▼ zoneLe	ft							
v editabletextHeader								
▼ logonn	niniform							
ForumSearch Go								
▼ Forum	Group 🎡	Threads	Posts	Last post				
Samp This is a	ole Forum Group a sample forum group.							
P	Sample Forum 2 This is the second sample forum. Lock	0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)				
	Sample Forum 1 This is the first sample forum. Lock	0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)				
▼ ForumSearchResults								

13. Finally, we will save the page as a new page template so that it can be reused in the future (we will use it when creating the **Forum search** page). Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. In the pop-up dialog, enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Forums
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Forums
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



3.11.2 Creating the Forum search page

The **Forum search** page is accessible from the **Forums** page, after clicking the **Advanced search** link of the **Forum search box** web part. The page contains the **Forum search - advanced dialog** web part which enables searching the forums with extended search criteria.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the **Forums** page from the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page** (menu item) document type.



2. We will use the page template created in the <u>previous chapter</u> as the starting point. Choose the **My Community Site templates -> My Community Site - Forums** page template. Enter *Forum search* into the **Page name** field and click **Save**.

A Kentico	Live Site	Site Manager My Comm	unity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🏾 🏐	Sign Out
CMS Desk Content My desk Tools Administration E-commerce	On-line marketing			di Enterprise Mar	keting Solution
New Delete Move Down	Search				?
We Community Site	Other I				
Blogs	Spell check				?
Page name: Forum search					
Home •					
Logon page	parent page template O Crea	ate a blank page with layout	 Create a blank page 		
Media Media	Template name:		S	earch	
Search Blank					
Blogs	no image	no image	no image	no image	
E-commerce					
Sector FAQs	StarterTemplate	My Community Site -	My Community Site -	My Community Site -	
🕥 Forums 🔂 General		Blog creation	Blog list	Blog posts	
🚽 Home pages					
🖄 Images					
Knowledge base	no image	no image	no image	no image	
Master templates Membership and accurity					
My Community Site template	My Community Site -	My Community Site -	My Community Site -	My Community Site -	
Sews	Blogs	Forums	Home page	Logon Page	
Newsletter Offices					
Press releases					
Products Templates with editable region	r				
i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i					
	1 2				
	My Community Si	te - Forums			
	This is the Forums page	of My Community Site.			
< <u> </u>					

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. In the pop-up dialog, enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Forum search
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.ForumSearch
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administratio	n E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	👤 Global Administrator 🔻 🛛	v6.0.
Kentico Content My CMS Desk Content Up Wew Delete Move Down Content management Content management Down Content management Files Files Forums Forumsearch Home Logon page Media Search News Search Search	desk Tools Administration Edit Preview View m Page Design Form General URLs Template > Metadata Categories Menu Workflow Versions Related docs	n E-commerce On-line marketing Live site List Search ode Uties Analytics Properties A	Live Site Site Manager My Community Site Global Ac ng h r Global Ac Select Global Ac Global Ac Select Global Ac Select Global Ac Template as new page template - Windows Internet Explorer Global Ac Template display name: My Community Site - Forum search		A Global Administrator V	/6.0.
	Linked docs Security Attachments	Inherit content Use page template settings Do not inherit any content Inherit only master page Select inherited levels	Template code name: My CommunitySite.rorumSearch My CommunitySite templates This is the Forum search page My Community Site. Template description:	s v arch page of v v		

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. Firstly, delete all web parts so that only the **editabletextHeader** and **ForumSearchResults** web parts remain.

~	/Forums/Forum search - page template: My Community Site - Forum search	
	▼ zoneLeft	4
	▼ editabletextHeader 🍥	
	▼ ForumSearchResults 🎲	

5. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneLeft web part zone and choose the Forums -> Forum search - advanced dialog web part. You can leave all properties of the web part at the default values. Drag and drop the web part between the other two web parts on the page.

6. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Forums advanced search* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.

7. The page is finished. If you view it in **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

Part 2	185
--------	-----

/Forums/Foru	m search - page template: My Community Site - Fo	rum search
▼ zoneLeft		4
▼ editabletext	tHeader 🎯	
▼ ExtendedFo	orumSearchDialog 🎲	0
Written by:		
Search in forums:		
Search within:	Subject and text	
Sort results by:	Post time ▼	Ascending Obscending
▼ ForumSear	Search chResults	

3.12 Creating the Groups section

3.12.1 Creating the Groups page

The Groups page is the title page of the Groups section. Users will see two **Groups viewer** web parts. The first one of them will be displaying the groups where the user is a members. The second one will be displaying all groups sorted from the newest to the oldest, paged by 9 groups.

If you right-click a group in one of the Groups viewers, you will be offered some actions by a context menu. This functionality is provided in the transformation and <u>here</u>, you can find a description of how exactly it is achieved.

In case you needed detailed information about Kentico CMS Groups module, please refer to the <u>Module</u> <u>Groups</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Select the root of the content tree and click New. Choose the Page (menu item) document type.



2. Select the My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate created in this chapter. Into the

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce (<u>Live Site</u> Dn-line marketing	Site Manager My Comm	unity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🤮 Sign 🆽 Enterprise Marketing So	Out olution
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
✓ In the second sec	Rare name: Groups	Spell check				?
 Forums Home Logon page 	Use existing page template Use page	arent page template O Crea	ate a blank page with layout	Create a blank page		
Media •	All page templates Articles	Template name:		S	earch	
Search ®	 Alters Blank Blogs E-commerce Events 	no image	no image	no image	ngani	
	FAQs FAQs General Home pages	_StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Blog creation	My Community Site - Blog list	My Community Site - Blog posts	
[Images Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security 	no image	ng image	no image	na inage	
	My Community Site templates News Newsletter	My Community Site - Blogs	My Community Site - Forum search	My Community Site - Forums	My Community Site - Home page	
	 Q Offices Q Press releases Products Q Templates with editable region Q Wiki 					
		1 2				
		_StarterTemplate				
	۲	This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	starting point for development of ma	any

Page name field, enter Groups and click Save.

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Groups
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.Groups
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add another **Editable text** web part to **zoneCenter**. This web part will be displaying a text informing users that they can get context menus with available group-related actions by right clicking a group. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

5. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *Groups* into the first Editable text web part's text field. Into the second one, enter: *Right click the group to get available actions.* Click **Save**.

Blogs	Forums	Groups	Home	Media	News	Search
Groups Right d	lick the group	to get availab	le actions.			Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new group Create a new blog Sign out

6. Switch back to the **Design** tab. We will add the first **Groups viewer** for displaying the current user's groups. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: YourGroups
- Display to roles: _authenticated_

188 Kentico CMS 6.0 Community Site Guide

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupDisplayName
- WHERE condition: GroupID IN (Select MemberGroupID FROM Community_GroupMember WHERE MemberUserID = {%currentuser.userid%} AND MemberStatus = 0)
- Selected columns: GroupCreatedWhen,GroupID,GroupName,GroupDisplayName,GroupDescription, GroupAvatarID, AvatarGuid
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: You are not currently in any group.
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box Light
- Web part container title: Your groups
- Content after: <div class="clear"> </div>

Click OK.

7. The second **Groups viewer** will be displaying all groups ordered from the newest to the oldest, paged by 9 groups. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: RecentlyAddedGroups
- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsList
- ORDER BY condition: GroupCreatedWhen DESC
- Selected columns: GroupCreatedWhen,GroupID,GroupName,GroupDisplayName,GroupDescription, GroupAvatarID,AvatarGuid
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are no recently added groups at this moment.
- Page size: 9
- Paging mode: PostBack
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Recently added groups
- Content after: <div class="clear"> </div>

8. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

~	/Groups - page template: My Community Site - Groups	
	▼ zoneCenter ↓ editabletext ③	 ▼ zoneRight ↓ Iogonminiform ()
	editabletext1	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
	YourGroups You are not currently in any group.	My messages My friends My invitations
	RecentlyAddedGroups	Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out
-	Sort by: Group name Created Search There are no recently added groups at this moment.	

3.12.2 Creating the Create page

On this page, users will be provided with the possibility to create new groups. This is achieved using the **Group registration** web part. There will also be the **Groups viewer** web part in **zoneRight**, which will be displaying the latest 5 groups. The page is accessible from the **Shortcuts** menu, by clicking the **Create a new group** link.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Create* and click **Save**.

Content My des	sk Tools Administration E-commerce (<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	inity Site 💌 💶 Global Adı	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 📢	Sign Out
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
My Community Site Blogs	Save and create another	Spell check				?
 Glogs Files Forums Groups Heres 	Page name: Create Use existing page template O Use page template	arent page template 🛛 Crea	te a blank page with layout (Create a blank page		
Logon page	✓ All page templates	Template name:		S	earch	
News Search	 Alces Blank Blogs E-commerce 	poimage	no image	noimage	no image	
	 ❑ EVents ❑ FAQs ❑ Forums ⊲ General ❑ Home pages 	_StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Blog creation	My Community Site - Blog list	My Community Site - Blog posts	
	 Images Job openings Knowledge base Master templates 	no image	no image	noimage	no image	
	My Community Site templates News Newsletter	My Community Site - Blogs	My Community Site - Forum search	My Community Site - Forums	My Community Site - Groups	
	 Press releases Products Templates with editable region Wiki 					
		1 2				
	4 Þ	_StarterTemplate This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	e starting point for developm	ient of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Groups create
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupsCreate
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Design** tab. Firstly, delete the **Logon mini form** in **zoneRight**. We will not need it on this page as the page is accessible only to authenticated users (the Shortcuts menu doesn't display the link to unauthenticated users).

5. Now that the Logon mini form is deleted, we will add the **Groups viewer** below the **Shortcuts** menu. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, the rest of them can be left at the default values:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsPreviewList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupCreatedWhen DESC
- Select Top N groups: 5
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no groups.
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box

• Web part container title: Recent groups

Click OK.

6. Let's move on to **zoneCenter**. First, we will add another **Editable text** web part for displaying additional info text. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

7. Below the second Editable text web part, we will add the main web part of this page - the **Group registration** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group registration** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Template source alias path: /Groups/Template
- Template target alias path: /Group-pages
- Text after successful registration: Group has been succesfully registered. Click here to view group profile

Click OK.

8. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *Create new group* into the first Editable text web part's text field. Into the second Editable text web part's HTML area, enter the following text:

By entering the details into the form below, you can create your new user group. Make sure you give the group a name and description according to the group's field of interest. It is a good way of attracting site users with the same interest to join your group.

Click Save.

Blogs	Forums	Groups	Home	Media	News					
Create n	Create new group									
By enter to the gr	ing the details in oup's field of int	to the form belor erest. It is a goo	w, you can cre d way of attra	eate your new i	user group. Make sure you give the group a name and description accordir s with the same interest to join your group.	ig A				
						-				

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

▼ /Groups/Creat	e - page template: My Community Site - Groups create	
 ▼ zoneCenter ▼ editabletext ▼ editabletext1 	Proup the form below, you can create your new user group. Make sure you give the group a name and description according to t. It is a good way of attracting site users with the same interest to join your group.	▼ zoneRight ▼ Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages
GroupRegist	ration	My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out
Approve members: Content access:	 Any site member can join Only approved members can join except for invited members Only approved members can join except for invited members Anybody can view the content Site members can view the content Only group members can view the content 	There are currently no groups.
	OK	

3.12.3 Creating the Management page

On the Management page, group administrators will be able to manage the profile and settings of their groups. This functionality is provided by the **Group profile** web part. The page is accessible by clicking the **Manage the group** link in the **Shortcuts** menu. This link is displayed only to group administrators when viewing the group's profile.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Content My d	desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search
 Wy Community Site Blogs Files Forums Groups Create Home Logon page Media News Search 	New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) Article Blog Cell phone Event
	👺 Event (booking system)

2. Choose the **Create a blank page** option. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Management* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	<u>Live Site Manager</u> My Community Site 🔽 £ Global Administrator desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing	▼ v6.0.4237 Sign Out Interprise Marketing Solution
New Delete A Move Down	Edit Preview Live site List Search	?
Content management	View mode Other	
My Community Site Image: Site My Community Site My Community Site	Spell check	?
🛛 🏐 Files®		
Forums	Page name: Management	
	Clube existing page template Clube paget page template Capital Allank page with layout Capital a blank page	
Create •	O use existing page template O use parent page template O create a blaink page with rayour O create a blaink page	
Home• Logon page•	The new page will use new ad-hoc page template with an empty layout.	

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Groups management
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupsManagement
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. On the same tab, click the **Edit template properties** link. In the pop-up window, switch to the Layout tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

```
<div class="subcontentDiv">
<div class="forumSearch">
        <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenter" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
```

</div>

Click Save.



5. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab and enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Management* into the **Document URL path** field.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administrati	on E-commerce On-li	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u> My Community Site 💌 ne marketing	💄 Global
New Delete Avore Down Content management	Edit Preview View n	Live site List	Search Other	
 Wy Community Site Blogs Files Forums Groups Create Management Home Logon page Media News Search 	Page Design Form General URLs > Template	Properties Analytics Save Alias Document alias:	Management	
	Categories Menu Workflow	Document URL path Use custom URL path: Path type: Path or pattern:	 ✓ Standard URL or wildcard Route	
	Versions Related docs Linked docs Security	Extended properties URL extensions:	Use custom URL extensions	

6. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add the **Group security access** web part. This web part checks if the user has the appropriate permissions for this group and redirects them to the **Access** page, which we will create later in <u>this chapter</u>, in case that the permissions are insufficient. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group security access** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values. Click **OK**.

7. Below the Group security access, we will add the **Static text** web part, which will show the path to the currently managed group in a form of breadcrumbs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

• Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs

• Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span class="CMSBreadCrumbsCurrentItem">
{%CMSContext.CurrentDocument.DocumentName|(encode)true%} </span>
</div>
```

Click OK.

8. Finally, we will add the **Group profile** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group profile** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

• Group name: (current group)

Click OK.

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

~	/Groups/Management - page template: My Community Site - Groups management		2
	▼ zoneCenter	4	
	▼ GroupSecurityAccess 🍥		
	▼ Breadcrumbs 🚳 t		
1	▼ GroupProfile ⓐ anage this group.		

3.12.4 Creating the Access page

Many of the pages in the Groups section contain the **Group security access** web part. This web part checks if the user is permitted to see the content of the page. When a user tries to access such a page with insufficient permissions, they are redirected to the Access page. Here, a message is displayed telling that access is not permitted. This message is displayed by the **Group security message** web part.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Access* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	<u>Site Manaqer</u> My Commu	unity Site 💌 🎩 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🥑 🚮 Enterprise Ma	Sign Out
New Delete Move Up Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
 My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Groups 	Page name: Access	Spell check		Occupie a bierti asso	_	?
Create Create C	 Ge existing page templates All page templates Articles Blank Blogs 	Template name:	ate a blank page with layout		earch	
News • Search •	E-commerce E-commerce Events FAQs Forums General More pages	StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Blog creation	My Community Site - Blog list	My Community Site - Blog posts	
	 Transpes Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security 	no image	ngani on	no image	no image	
	My Community Site templates News Newsletter Offices Ores encoded	My Community Site - Blogs	My Community Site - Forum search	My Community Site - Forums	My Community Site - Groups	
	 Press releases Products Products Wiki 	1 <u>2</u>				
	< []	_StarterTemplate This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	starting point for developm	ent of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Access
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Access
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Access* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administrati	on E-commerce On-line marketing	Live Site Site Manager My C	Community Site 🔽 👤 Global A
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview View n	Live site List Search onde Other		
 My Community Site Blogs 	Page Design Form	Properties Analytics		
 Files Forums Graves 	General			
Access	URLs >	Document alias: Access		
Management Home	Metadata	Document URL path		
Logon page •	Menu	Use custom URL path: 📝 Path type: 💿 Standar	rd URL or wildcard 💿 Route 💿 MV	/C
News •	Workflow Versions	Path or pattern: //Groups/{G	FoupName}/Access	
	Related docs	Extended properties URL extensions:		
	Security	Use cus	tom URL extensions	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, remove the **Editable text** web part from **zoneCenter**. We will add the **Static text** web part instead of it. The Static text web part will be set up so that it displays the path to the page in a form of breadcrumbs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span class="CMSBreadCrumbsCurrentItem">>
Access denied </span>
</div>
```

Click OK.

6. The main part of this page is the **Group security message** web part. The web part will display the warning message about insufficient permissions. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, leave all of them at the default values.

7. The page is finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Access - page template: My Community Site - Access	Den en e
 zoneCenter ✓ Breadcrumbs ed ed ✓ GroupSecurityMessage ✓ 	 zoneRight logonminiform Shortcuts Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out

3.12.5 Creating groups starter template

In this example, we will create another starter template. In the Groups section, there will be pages displaying content of particular groups - group's profile, pages (articles), media libraries, group members and group forums. All of the pages will contain the same three web parts, so we will create a starter template with these web parts to facilitate development of these pages.

The page template will be based on the _StarterTemplate page template created in this chapter.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter _*GroupsTemplate* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce (<u>Live Site</u> Dn-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	unity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🤤 Sign Out .1 Enterprise Marketing Solution
New Delete Move Up Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other			?
V 🕘 My Community Site	Save and create another	Spell check			?
D Biogs D G Files D Forums Croups Access	Page name: _GroupsTemplate Use existing page template Use page	arent page template 🛛 Crea	ite a blank page with layout	Create a blank page	
Create	All page templates	Template name:		S	earch
Management® Home® Googon page® Media ® News ® Search ®	 Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce E-commerce Forums General Home pages Images Job openings Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News News News Membership and security 	StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Access winge	My Community Site - Biog creation	My Community Site - Blog list
	이 마ess releases 이 Press releases 이 Products 이 Templates with editable region 이 Wiki				
		1 2 3 StarterTemplate			
	< ۲	This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	starting point for development of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: _GroupsTemplate
- Template code name: _GroupsTemplate
- **Template category**: My Community Site templates

• Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add the **Group links** menu into **zoneRight** web part zone. The menu will contain links interconnecting particular pages of the currently displayed group like its forums, media, etc. The menu will be created using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (
⁺) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

Web part control ID: Links

• Text:

```
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx">Home</a><br />
<a href="~/Group-pages/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Pages.aspx">
Pages</a><br />
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Media-list.aspx">
Media</a><br />
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Media-list.aspx">
Media</a><br />
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Media-list.aspx">
Media</a><br />
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Media-list.aspx">
</a>
</a>
```

- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Group links

Click OK.

5. In **zoneCenter**, you first need to **remove** the **Editable text** web part that is already in the template. Now that **zoneCenter** is clear, we can add **Group security access** web part to the top of the web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community** -> **Group security access** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part. Just use the default values and click **OK**.

6. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



7. Finally, delete the **_GroupsTemplate** page from the content tree. The page template will remain saved and available.



3.12.6 Creating the Profile page

The Profile page displays a profile of a group besed on the {*GroupName*} wildcard part of the URL, which gets translated into a query string parameter and is then taken as the current group. More information about wildcard URLs can be found in <u>this chapter</u> of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

The profile is displayed using the **Group public profile** based on the *Community.Group.DisplayProfile* alternative form. You can learn how to modify the alternative form <u>here</u>.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _GroupsTemplate created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Profile* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Comm	unity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🔮 Sign Out l Enterprise Marketing Solution
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other			?
Very My Community Site	Save and create another	Spell check			?
 Blogs Files Forums Groups Access 	Page name: Profile Use existing page template Use p	arent page template 🛛 Crea	te a blank page with layout	Create a blank page	
Create	v 🔄 All page templates	Template name:		S	arch
Management*	刘 Articles 🕥 Blank				
■ Logon page ● ■ Media ● ■ News ●	 Blogs E-commerce Events 	no image	no image	no image	no inage
📄 Search®	ි FAQs ම Forums ම General ම Home pages	_GroupsTemplate	_StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Access	My Community Site - Blog creation
ŀ	 Images Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security 	nolinage	no image	no image	ito image
	My Community Site templates News Newsletter Offices	My Community Site - Blog list	My Community Site - Blog posts	My Community Site - Blogs	My Community Site - Forum search
	에 Cinces 에 Press releases 에 Products 에 Templates with editable region 에 Wiki				
		1 2 3			
		_GroupsTemplate			
	۲	This is the template for	some pages of the Groups	section.	

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Groups profile
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupsProfile
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*} into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My (desk Tools Administrat	tion E-commerce On-lin	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u> My Community Site 💌 e marketing
New Delete Move Up Content management	Edit Preview	Live site List	Search Other
 Wy Community Site Blogs Files Forums Groups Access Create Management 	Page Design Form General URLs > Template Metadata	Properties Analytics Properties Analytics Save Alias Document alias: Document URL path -	Profile
Home Logon page Media News Search	Categories Menu Workflow Versions Related docs Linked docs	Use custom URL path: Path type: Path or pattern: Extended properties URL extensions:	Standard URL or wildcard Route MVC //Groups/{GroupName}
	Security		Use custom URL extensions

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will start with **zoneRight** web part zone. Below the **Group links** info box, we will add two more info boxes. The first one of them will be displaying the current group's administrators. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group members viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: GroupMembersAdministrators
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList
- No record found text: There are currently no administrators.
- Show filter: disabled
- WHERE condition:

```
MemberUserID IN (SELECT UserID FROM CMS_UserRole WHERE RoleID IN (SELECT RoleID
FROM CMS_Role WHERE RoleGroupID = '{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupID%}' AND
RoleIsGroupAdministrator = 1))
```

- Selected columns: UserID, UserNickName, UserGender, UserDateOfBirth, UserAvatarID, UserCreated, UserName, AvatarGuid
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Group administrators

Click OK.

6. Below the group administrators, we will add the same **Group members viewer** web part, but this one will be displaying the latest 5 approved members of the group. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group members viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

• Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList

- No record found text: There are currently no members.
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: MemberApprovedWhen DESC
- Select Top N members: 5
- Selected columns: UserID, UserNickName, UserGender, UserDateOfBirth, UserAvatarID, UserCreated, UserName, AvatarGUID
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Group administrators

Click OK.

7. The zoneRight web part zone is finshed, so let's move to zoneCenter. To the top of the web part zone, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the Breadcrumbs web part. Click the Add web part (
icon of the zoneCenter web part zone and choose the Navigation -> Breadcrumbs web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Breadcrumb separator:
- Content before: <div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

8. Below the breadcrumbs, we want the group's public profile to be displayed. This can be achieved using the **Group public profile** web part, which displays the group's public profile based on the specified alternative form. By default, the *Community.Group.DisplayProfile* alternative form is used. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group public profile** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part. Just use the default values and click **OK**.

9. Below the Group public profile, we will add a message board where group administrators will be able to leave announcements. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group message board** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Message transformation: Community. Transformations. MessageBoardComments
- No messages text: There are no announcements at this time
- **Display name**: Group {%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%} board
- Access: Only group admin
- Enable subscriptions: enabled
- Board base URL: ~/Groups/Profile.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Group announcements

Click OK.

10. Now we will add a **Group forum posts viewer**. This web part will be set so that it will display the 5 latest posts in the group's forums. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group forum posts viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

• Transformation name: Community.Transformations.ForumGroupPostsList

- **Top N**: 5
- Order by: PostTime DESC
- Selected columns: PostIDPath, PostForumID, PostText, PostTime, PostSubject
- Hide if no record found: disalbed
- No record found text: There are currently no posts.
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Latest in forums

Click OK.

11. The last web part on the page will be a **Repeater** displaying articles in the Group pages section. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: MostRecentPages
- Path: /Group-pages/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Pages/%
- Document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- ORDER BY expression: DocumentCreatedWhen DESC
- Transformation: CMS.SimpleArticle.SimplePreview
- Selected item transformation: CMS.SimpleArticle.Default
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no pages.
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Most recent pages
- Content before: <div class="GeneralList">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

12. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Profile - page template: My Community Site - Groups profile	
▼ zoneCenter GroupSecurityAccess F F GroupPublicProfile Ge	 ▼ zoneRight ➡ logonminiform ➡ Shortcuts
 ✓ GroupHostsViewer ♀ 	My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group
There are currently no posts.	Create a new blog Sign Out
There are currently no pages.	Links Wiss
	▼ GroupMembersAdministrate

3.12.7 Creating the Members page

On the Members page, users of the current group will be displayed. This will be achieved using the **Group members viewer** web part.

If you right-click a user, you will be offered some actions by a context menu. This functionality is provided in the transformation and <u>here</u>, you can find a description of how exactly it is achieved.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



▼ GroupMembersViewer

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Members* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce (<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	unity Site 💌 🔳 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🛛 🌍	Sign Out
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
V 🚱 My Community Site	Save and create another	Spell check				?
 Biogs Files Forums Groups Access 	Page name: Members Use existing page template O Use page template	arent page template 🛛 Crea	te a blank page with layout	Create a blank page		
Create*	All page templates	Template name:		S	earch	
Management® Profile® Logon page® Media ® News® Search®	 Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce Events FAQs Forums General Home pages Job openings Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News Newsletter Offices 	_GroupsTemplate	StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Access	My Community Site - Blog creation	
	이 Press releases 이 Products 이 Templates with editable regior 이 Wiki					
		GroupsTemplate				
	۲	This is the template for	some pages of the Groups	section.		

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Group members
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupsMembers
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Members* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

Content My of	desk Tools Administr	<u>Live Site Site Manager</u> My Community Site ▼ ▲ G tration E-commerce On-line marketing	loba
New Delete Move Up Content management	Edit Preview View	v Live site List Search w mode Other	
 My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Groups Access Create Management Members Profile Home Logon page Media News Search 	Page Design Form General Image: Comparison of the second s	m Properties Analytics Image: Save Alias Document alias: Members Document URL path Use custom URL path Use custom URL path: Image: Path type: Path type: Image: Standard URL or wildcard Image: Path type: Path or pattern: //Groups/{GroupName}/Members Extended properties URL extensions: Image: Use custom URL extensions Use custom URL extensions	
	Security		

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. We can leave **zoneRight** as it is and go straight to **zoneCenter**. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

• Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs

• Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span class="CMSBreadCrumbsCurrentItem">
{%CMSContext.CurrentDocument.DocumentName|(encode)true%} </span>
</div>
```

Click OK.

6. Below the heading, it will be useful to add some info text. We will use the **Editable text** web part for this purpose. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text** - **Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

Click OK.

7. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter the following text into the **Editable text** web part's text area.

Bellow you can find list of group members. Right click the user to get available actions.

Click Save.

8. Switch back to **Design** tab. Now we will add the **Group members viewer** web part, which displays members of the current group. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group members viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them.

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersList
- Selected columns: UserID, UserNickName, UserGender, UserDateOfBirth, UserAvatarID, UserActivityPoints, UserName, AvatarGuid
- Page size: 9
- Paging mode: PostBack
- Group size: 9
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: All members

Click OK.

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Members - page template: My Community Site - Group members	
ZoneCenter CroupSecurityAccess Breadcrumbs editabletext bf group members. Right click the user to get available actions. GroupMembersViewer Sort by: User name Activity Search	 zoneRight logonminiform (a) Shortcuts (a) Shortcuts (a) My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out Links (a) s s

3.12.8 Creating the Media list page

Groups can have any number of media libraries. Because of this fact, we will create the Media list page. On this page, a list of all media libraries of the current group will be displayed by the **Group media libraries viewer** web part. After clicking a media library, users will be redirected to the **Media** page, created in <u>this chapter</u>, where the content of the library will be displayed.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My	y desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marke	eting
New Delete Avore Up	Edit Preview Live site List Sear) rch
Content management	View mode Oth	er
V 🚱 My Community Site	New document	
Blogs		
🗅 📹 Files 🖣	Please select new document type:	
Forums		
🗢 📄 Groups 🎴	Page (menu item)	
Access •		
Create •	Article	
📄 Management •	灯 <u>Blog</u>	

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Media list* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	unity Site 💌 🎩 Global Adı	ministrator ▼ v6.0.4237 .1 Enterprise i	Sign Out Marketing Solution
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other				?
 My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Groups 	Save me Save and create another Page name: Media list Use existing page template Use p	Spell check	ate a blank page with layout	◯ Create a blank page	_	?
 Home* Logon page* Media* News* Search* All page templates Articles Articles Blank Blogs Events FAQs Forums General Home pages Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and t My Community Si News News News News 	 All page templates Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce 	Template name:	no inaga	roimage	earch roimage	
	에 Events 에 FAQs 에 Forums 에 General 에 Home pages 에 Images	_GroupsTemplate	_StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Access	My Community Site - Blog creation	
	 Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News 	My Community Site - Blog list	My Community Site - Blog posts	Ny Community Site - Blogs	My Community Site - Forum search	
	 Offices Press releases Products Templates with editable region Wiki 	1.2.3				
	< <u> </u>	_GroupsTemplate	some pages of the Groups	section.		

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Media list
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MediaList
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Media-list* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administrati	on E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site Site Manager</u> My Community	Site 💌 👤 Global
New Delete Move Up Content management	Edit Preview View n	Live site List Search oode Other		
 Wy Community Site Blogs Files Forums Groups Access Create Management Media list Profile Home Logon page Media News Search 	Page Design Form	Properties Analytics		
	General URLs Template	Alias Document alias: Media-list		
	Metadata Categories Menu	Document URL path Use custom URL path: Path type:		
	Workflow Versions	Path or pattern: //Groups/{G	iroupName}/Media-list	
	Related docs Linked docs Security	URL extensions:	om URL extensions	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs"> Groups {%CommunityContext. CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext. CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%} Media </div>

6. Now we will add some info text using the Editable text web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

Click OK.

7. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter the following text into the **Editable text** web part's text area.

Bellow you can find list of group media libraries.

Click Save.

8. Switch back to **Design** tab. We will add the **Group media libraries viewer** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group media libraries viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them.

- · Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no media libraries.

Click OK.

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



3.12.9 Creating the Media page

When a user clicks a media library in a list on the Media list page, created in the previous chapter, they are redirected to this page where the **Media gallery** web part displays the content of the selected library. The name of the library is passed in the {*GroupName*}/{*LibraryName*} wildcard part of the URL of this page. Then it gets translated into a query string parameter and displayed by the Media gallery web part as the current group.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Media* and click **Save**.
| Kentico
CMS Desk Content My | desk Tools Administration E-commerce | <u>Live Site</u>
On-line marketing | Site Manager My Comm | unity Site 💌 🏼 单 Global Ad | ministrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🏼 🌚 | Sign Out |
|--|---|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| New Delete Move Down
Content management | Edit Preview Live site List
View mode | Search
Other | | | | ? |
| Wy Community Site Mg Community Site Blogs Files Files Forums | Save and create another Page name: Media | Spell check | | | | ? |
| | Use existing page template Use page templates All page templates Articles | arent page template O Crea | ate a blank page with layout | Create a blank page | iearch | |
| Media list Members Profile Home | ි Blank
ම Blogs
ම E-commerce
ම Events | no image | no image | no image | ng image | |
| Logon page
Media
News
Search | 에 FAQs
에 Forums
에 General
에 Home pages | _GroupsTemplate | _StarterTemplate | My Community Site -
Access | My Community Site -
Blog creation | |
| | Images Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and openinty | aparil on | no image | no image | no Imaga | |
| | My Community Site templates
News
News
Offices | My Community Site -
Blog list | My Community Site -
Blog posts | My Community Site -
Blogs | My Community Site -
Forum search | |
| | Press releases Products Templates with editable region Wiki | | | | | |
| | | 1 2 3
_GroupsTemplate |) | section | | |
| | ۰ III ا | mis is the template for | some pages of the Groups | secuon. | | |

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Group media
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.GroupMedia
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups/{GroupName}/Library-{LibraryName}* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

Kentico	daalu Taala Administeri	Coline Economicano Coline medicina	Live Site Site Manager My Community Site 💌 👤 Globa
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview View	Live site List Search Other	
🗢 🍪 My Community Site •	Page Design Form	Properties Analytics	
▷ 📄 Blogs● ▷ 🏐 Files●	\lor	Save	
D D Forums	General	Alias	
	URLs >	Allas Decument clico: Madia	
Create •	Template	Document allas. Media	
Management •	Metadata	Document URL path	
Media list	Categories	Use custom URL path:	
Members•	Menu	Path type: Standar 	rd URL or wildcard 💿 Route 💿 MVC
Profile •	Workflow	Path or pattern: /Groups/{G	<pre>>roupName}/Library-{LibraryName}</pre>
Home Logon page	Versions	Extended properties	
Media •	Related docs		
News •	Linked docs	Use cust	tom URL extensions
Search •	Security		

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span class="CMSBreadCrumbsCurrentItem">
{%CMSContext.CurrentDocument.DocumentName|(encode)true%} </span>
</div>
```

Click OK.

6. Below the breadcrumbs, we will add another **Static text** web part. This one will provide a link back to the list of the group's media libraries. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: BackLink
- Text:

Back to libraries

Click OK.

7. The last web part in zoneCenter will be the Media gallery web part. This web part displays content of the particular libraries based on the library name passed in query string. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Media library -> Media gallery** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Show subfolders content: enabled
- Hide folder tree: enabled
- Content before: <div style="padding: 10px 0px 0px 100px">
- Content after: <div class="clear"></div></div>

Click OK.

8. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Media - page template: My Community Site - Group media	
zoneCenter	✓ zoneRight
GroupSecurityAccess	
Breadcrumbs	- Ingorinamoni 🤤
	▼ Shortcuts
BackLink Back to libraries	My profile
MediaGallery 🚳	Ny message
	My friends
	Create a new group
	Create a new blog
	<u>Sign Out</u>
	▼ Links 🚳 s
	Home
	<u>Pages</u> <u>Media</u>
	Members

3.12.10 Creating the Forums page

The forums page will provide the group forums functionality using the **Group forum list** web part. It will display the content of the group forums based on the {*GroupName*} wildcard part of the URL.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

*	Kentie CMS Desk	co k	Content N	1y desk	Tools	Administra	tion E-com	merce	On-line marketing
New	Delete	🗊 Copy à Move	👚 Up		Edit	Preview	O Live site	List	Search
_	Content r	manageme	nt			View	mode		Other
	1y Commu	nity Site			Nev	v docume	nt		
	Files			Р	lease sel	ect new do	cument type	:	
D 📄	Forums [®]			1	-	<i>x</i>			
	Groups				Page	e (menu itei	<u>m)</u>		
	Acces	ss 📍			🖹 Artiz	lo			
	📄 Creat	e •			Artic	<u></u>			
	📄 Mana	gement®			🐑 <u>Bloo</u>	l			

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Forums* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My (desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	nity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🛛 🍪	Sign Out keting Solution
New Delete Move Down Content management Content Move Down	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
 Blogs Files Forums Groups Access 	Page name: Forums Use existing page template Use page	arent page template O Crea	te a blank page with layout	Create a blank page		
Create • Management • Media • Media list • Media list • Members • Profile •	 에 All page templates 에 Articles 에 Blank 에 Blogs e-commerce 안vents 	roimage	no image	no image	no image	
 Home Logon page Media • News • Search • 	FAQs General General Home pages Tho premises	_GroupsTemplate	_StarterTemplate	My Community Site - Access	My Community Site - Blog creation	
	Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News News	My Community Site - Blog list	My Community Site - Blog posts	My Community Site - Blogs	My Community Site - Forum search	
	이 UTICES 이 Press releases 이 Products 이 Templates with editable region 이 Wiki					
	< <u> </u>	1 2 3 _GroupsTemplate This is the template for	some pages of the Groups s	section.		

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Group forums
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.GroupForums
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Forums* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administrat	tion E-commerce On-li	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Sit</u> e	<u>e Manager</u> My Community Site 💌	⊥ Global
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview	Live site List	Search Other		
✓ In the second sec	Page Design Form	Properties Analytics			
Groups	General VIRLs >	Alias			
Access Create Forums	Template Metadata	Document alias:	Forums		
 Management Media Media list 	Categories Menu	Use custom URL path: Path type:	 Standard URL or wildcard 	💿 Route 💿 MVC	
Members Profile	Workflow Versions	Path or pattern:	/Groups/{GroupName}/Foru	ims	
Logon page	Related docs Linked docs	URL extensions:	Use custom URL extension	15	
📄 News 📍	Security				

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will leave **zoneRight** web part zone as it is and start modifying **zoneCenter** right off. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

• Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs

• Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span class="CMSBreadCrumbsCurrentItem">
{%CMSContext.CurrentDocument.DocumentName|(encode)true%} </span>
</div>
```

Click OK.

6. Below the breadcrumbs, we will add the **Forum search box** web part that will enable users to search the forum content. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum search box** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

• Content before:

<div class="ForumSearchBox">Search forums: </d>

Content after:

</div><div class="clear"></div>

Click OK.

7. The forum functionality itself is provided by the **Group forum list** web part. This is the only web part that is needed for the whole forums structure, all forum content will be displayed from this page by this web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group forum list** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Groups separator:

- **Base URL**: ~/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Forums.aspx
- Unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Forum-Unsubscribe.aspx

Click OK.

8. In step 6, we added the **Forum search box** web part to the page. Now we need to add another web part to the page where the search results will be displayed. This can be achieved by the **Group forum search results** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group forum search results** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

Click OK.

9. The last web part in this web part zone will be the **On-line users** web part. It will be set up so that it displays the number of users currently accessing the group's forum section. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership** -> **On-line users** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersOn-line
- Path: /Groups/{GroupName}/Forums
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Content before:

Click OK.

10. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

~	/Groups/Forums - page template: My Community Site - Group forums	
	v zoneCenter	▼ zoneRight
	GroupSecurityAccess Generation Breadcrumbs	✓ logonminiform
•	▼ ForumSearch @ Go	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
	 ▼ GroupForumList @ ▼ GroupForumSearchResults @ 	My messages My friends My invitations
ĺ	OnlineUsers	<u>Create a new group</u> <u>Create a new blog</u>
		Sign Out
		✓ Links ⁽ _S) ⁽ _S
		Home Pages Media
		Members Forums

3.12.11 Preparing the Group pages section

3.12.11.1 Creating the Template page

This page is a special one. It will be used as a template for the group pages section, which is created for each group under a specified page of the content tree, which we will create in <u>this chapter</u>. The group pages section enables members of a group to create and edit articles related to the group and displayed within the group's section.

On this page, there will be a **Repeater** displaying a list of articles of the particular group. This page will also be used as a master page for the **Pages** page, which will be displaying the particular articles placed under it. The Pages page will be created in the <u>following chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Template* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	unity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator ▼ v6.0.4237 d Enterprise	Sign Out Marketing Solution
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other				?
Content management	View mode Save and create another Page name: Template Use existing page template All page templates All page templates All page templates All page templates All page templates All page templates FAQS FAQS Forums General Home pages Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News News News Products Templates with editable region Wiki	Other Seell check arent page template Crew Template name: Crew Crew Crew Crew Crew Crew Crew Crew	Ite a blank page with layout	Create a blank page	Barch My Community Site - Blog creation My Community Site - Forum search	• •
	۲. m	1 2 3 _GroupsTemplate This is the template for	some pages of the Groups :	section.		

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

• Template display name: My Community Site - Group pages template

- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupPagesTemplate
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Still on the **Properties** tab, click the **Edit template properties** link. In the pop-up window, scroll down and change the inheritance so that the page template inherits from **Level 0** and **Level 2**. Click **Save** in the pop-up window to save the changes and close it.

Page template proper	ties - Windows Internet Explorer	- 0 X					
Page templat	te properties	?					
Page templates > My	/ Community Site - Group pages template						
General Design Sit	tes Scopes Layout Theme Web parts Header Documents						
Template display name	· My Community Site - Group pages template						
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite GroupPagesTemplate						
Category:							
Category.	This is the Group mages template						
	of My Community Site.						
Template description:							
	-						
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse						
Template type:	Portal page						
Master template:							
Inherit content:	Inherit all						
	Do not inherit any content						
	Select inherited levels						
	Level2						
	European Level3						
	Level4						
	Level5						

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Breadcrumbs** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Navigation** -> **Breadcrumbs** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Starting path: /{0}/{1}/
- Breadcrumb separator:
- Content before:

```
<div style="padding-left:10px" class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span class
="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.
CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%CommunityContext.
```

• Content after: </div>

Click OK.

6. Now we will add a repeater displaying a list of pages of the current group. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: repeaterPages
- Hide on subpages: enabled
- Path: ./Pages/%
- Document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- **Transformation**: CMS.SimpleArticle.SimplePreview
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no pages.
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Most recent pages
- Content before: <div class="GeneralList">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

7. Finally, we will add the **Page placeholder** in which the page with the particular article will be displayed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **General** -> **Page placeholder** web part. Leave all the properties of the web part at the default values and click **OK**.

8. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

▼ /Groups/Template - page template: My Community Site - Group pages template	
 ▼ zoneCenter ♥ GroupSecurityAccess ♥ breadcrumbs ♥ repeaterPages There are currently no pages. 	✓ zoneRight ✓ logonminiform ✓ ✓ Shortcuts ✓ ✓ ✓ Shortcuts ✓
pageplaceholder	My triends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out Links S Home Pages Media Members Forums

3.12.11.2 Creating the Pages page

This page also serves as the template for the group pages section. It will be copied along with the <u>Template</u> page to the specified path on each group's creation to form the group's group pages section.

On the page, there will be a **Repeater** for displaying the articles. We will also need the User contributions module web parts providing on-site adding and editing of articles. For more details about the User contributions concept, please refer to the <u>Module User contributions</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS**

Developer's Guide.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Pages* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration	E-commerce On-line market	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manaq</u> ting	er My Community Site 💌	👤 Global Administrator 🤊	 v6.0.4237 Sign Out Interprise Marketing Solution
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Liv	e Othe) ch			?
 ✓ Wy Community Site[®] ▷ Blogs[®] ▷ Yerrims[®] ○ Porrims[®] ▽ Groups[®] 	Save Save ar Page name: Pages Outse existing page tent	d create another Spell c	heck mplate Create a blank pa 	ige with layout _ ◯ Create a b	ilank page	?
Create	Layout name:			Search		
Management • Media • Media list • Media list •						
Profile Template Home Logon page	Full page (CSS)	Grid 2x2 cells	Grid 2x2 cells (CSS)	Grid 3x2 cells	Grid 3x2 cells (CSS)	Simple
News Search						
	Three columns	Three columns - 20/60/20 (CSS)	Three columns - 25/50/25 (CSS)	Three columns - 33/33/33 (CSS)	Three columns (C\$\$)	Top row, three columns, bottom row
	1 2 3 Simple Simple layout with one we	b part zone. Jage template				

3. Switch to the **Properties** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link. In the pop-up window, scroll down and select the inheritance so that the page template inherits from **Level 0** and **Level 2**. Click **Save**.

<i>e</i> Page template properti	ies - Windows Internet Explorer	
🄰 Page templat	e properties	?
> Page templates > Ad	-hor Pages	
Canand Davies I Au	nut. Tayta	
General Design Lay	out web parts neader Documents	
Template display name	: Ad-hoc: Pages	
Template code name:	f1bb467e-26ae-4423-9345-ab688cb23176	
Category:	Ad-hoc 💌	
	Generic default template	
Template description:		
	Ψ.	
Template type:	Portal page	
Master template:		
Inherit content:	Inherit all	=
	Do not inherit any content	
	Inherit only master page	
	Select inherited levels	
	····· 🗸 Level0	
	Level1	
	Level2	
	Levels	
	Level6	
	Level7	
	Levels	

4. Switch to the Layout tab and replace the original layout code with the following code:



Click Save.

Page template properties - Windows Internet Explorer
💐 Page template properties 🔹 🔹
> Page templates > Ad-hoc: Pages
General Design Layout Web parts Header Documents
Save a Check out to file
Shared layout Full page (CSS) ▼
Use custom layout
Layout type: ASCX Layout code: Use the following expression to add a new web part zone: <cms:cmswebpartzone id="zoneTopRight" runat="server"></cms:cmswebpartzone> (ID must be unique) <%@ Control Language="C#" ClassName="Simple" Inherits="CMS PortalControls.CMSAbstractLayout" %>
<pre><%@ Register Assembly= CMS.FonalControls Namespace= CMS.FonalControls TagPrenx= CT %> <div class="subcontentDiv"> </div></pre>
<pre><div class="contentGroupPages"></div></pre>
<ccl:cmswebpartzone id="zoneList" runat="server"></ccl:cmswebpartzone>
i = 121 2™ ™ 476 500 F iF iF 1 / 10

5. Back on the **Properties -> Template** tab, click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up window:

- Template display name: My Community Site Group template Pages
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupTemplatePages
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK.



6. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will need the **Group security access** web part to ensure that only users with appropriate permissions can access the group pages. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneList** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group security access** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave the default values for all of them.

7. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the **zoneList** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group contribution list** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Hide on subpages: enabled
- Path: ./%
- Path for new documents: ./%
- Allowed new document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- Alternative form name: PublicSimpleArticle
- Display list of documents: disabled
- New item button label: New page
- List button label: Pages
- · Select only published: disabled
- Allow editing by users: Authenticated

Click OK.

8. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneList web part zone and choose the Community -> Group edit contribution web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Show for document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- Alternative form name: PublicSimpleArticle

- Allow editing by users: Authenticated
- Content before: <div class="Contributions">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

9. Finally, we will add a **Repeater** for displaying the articles. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneList** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: ArticleRepeater
- Path: ./%
- Document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- Transformation: CMS.SimpleArticle.SimplePreview
- Selected item transformation: CMS.SimpleArticle.Default
- Navigation buttons: None
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no pages.
- Content before:
<div class="GeneralList">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

10. The page is finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

Blogs Forums Groups Home Media News	Search
Groups + + Pages	
/Groups/Template/Pages - page template: My Community Site - Group template - Pages	Shortcuts
▼ zoneList	Edit my profile
▼ GroupSecurityAccess	My messages My friends
▼ GroupContributionList	My invitations Create a new group
▼ GroupEditContribution @	Create a new blog
·▼ ArticleRepeater	Sign Out
	Crown links
	Group links
	Pages Media

3.12.11.3 Creating the Group pages title page

The Group pages page will not be displayed in the site navigation. It will also not contain any content. The only purpose of this page it for the group pages sections of particular groups to be placed under it. It is important to set the alias path of this page in the **Template target alias path** property of the **Group registration** web part, which was added to this page.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Forums



2. Choose the Create a blank page option. For Page name, enter Group pages and click Save.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Menu** tab and disable the **Show in navigation** option. Click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administratio	on E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u>	My Community Site 💌	💄 Global
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview View n Page Design Form	Live site List Search node Other			
 Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media News 	General URLs Template Metadata Categories Menu	Basic properties Menu caption: Show in navigation Show in sitemap:			
Startin	Workflow Versions Related docs Linked docs Security Attachments	 Standard behavior Inactive menu item Javascript command: <i>Example</i> URL redirection: <i>Example</i> 	: alert('hello');return faise; : http://www.mydomainxy.com	or ~/products.aspx	

4. That's the page finished, now you've got to enter its alias path in the site settings and the group pages of particular groups may be stored under it.

3.13 Creating the Members section

3.13.1 Creating the Members page

236

This page will be the title page of the Members section. We will base it on the **_StarterTemplate** page template created in <u>this chapter</u>. Besides the web parts from this page template, the page will contain two **Users viewer** web parts in the **zoneCenter** web part zone. The first one will be displaying the 6 most active users of the site. The second one will be displaying all site users, with the pager enabled and 9 records by page. In **zoneRight**, there will also be the **On-line users** web part showing who is currently on-line.

If you right-click a user in of of the **Users viewer**, you will be offered some actions by a context menu. This functionality is provided in the transformation and <u>here</u>, you can find a description of how exactly it is achieved.



1. Select the root of the content tree and click New. Choose the Page (menu item) document type.

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Members* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My o	lesk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	inity Site 💌 🎩 Global Ad	ministrator 👻 v6.0.4237 📑 Sign Out .1 Enterprise Marketing Solution
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other			?
 My Community Site* P Blogs* P Griles* P Forums* Group pages* 	Save and create another Page name: Members Use existing page template Use p	arent page template O Crea	te a blank page with layout	Create a blank page	2
Groups Home Logon page Media News	ି ଭୁ All page templates ୍ଦ୍ରୁ Articles ୍ଦ୍ରୁ Blank ଭୁ Blogs	Template name:			earch
📄 Search 🖲	Commerce Co	GroupsTemplate	_StarterTemplate	Article list with teasers	Article list without teasers
E	 an Home pages an Job openings an Job openings an Knowledge base an Master templates an Membership and security 	Barn maar pige	Emply		
	에 My Community Site templates 에 News 에 Newsletter 에 Offices 에 Press releases 에 Products 에 Templates with editable regior 에 Wiki	Blank master page	Empty	Event calendar	Event calendar with event details
		1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page to pages in the site.	emplate of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	e starting point for development of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Members
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Members
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- **Template description**: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Membership** -> **On-line users** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersOn-line
- Select top N: 20
- Additional info text: {2} member(s) on-line:

- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: On-line members
- Content after: <div>
View all on-line members</div>

Click OK.

5. In the **zoneCenter** web part zone, we will want an info text displayed above the Users viewers. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

• Web part control ID: editabletextContent

Click OK.

6. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter the following texts into the Editable text web parts' text fields:

- Heading: Members
- Content: Bellow you can find list of site members. Right click the user to get available actions.

Click Save.

Blogs	Forums	Groups	Home	Media	Members	News		
Members	6						 	
Bellow yo	ou can find list of	f site members. F	Right click the I	user to get ava	ailable actions.			
								=
								-

7. Now we will add the first **Users viewer** which will display the 6 most active users. Switch back to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Users viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: UserActivityPoints DESC
- Select Top N members: 6
- Selected columns: UserID, UserNickName, UserGender, UserDateOfBirth, UserAvatarID, UserActivityPoints, UserName, AvatarGuid
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box Light
- Web part container title: Top members
- Content after: <div class="clear"> </div>

Click OK.

8. The second repeater will display all site members paged by 9. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Users viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: AllUsers
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersList
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: No users found
- **Selected columns**: UserID, UserNickName, UserGender, UserDateOfBirth, UserAvatarID, UserActivityPoints, UserName, AvatarGuid
- Page size: 9
- Paging mode: PostBack
- Group size: 9
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: All members
- Content after: <div class="clear"> </div>

Click OK.

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot. Obviously, because there are no users on the site yet, only the Administrator is displayed by the viewers. However, you may try creating a few users via the administration interface or registering on-site. You will see the new users listed on this page.

VMembers - page template: My Community Site - Members	
▼ zoneCenter	 ▼ zoneRight ↓ Iogonminiform ()
editabletextContent	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
Admin Gender: N/A Age: N/A	<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u> <u>Create a new group</u> <u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign Out</u>
AllUsers Sort by: User name Activity Search	▼ OnlineUsers ∰s There are currently no users on -line.
Admin Gender: N/A Age: N/A	View all on-line members

3.13.2 Creating the Online page

In the <u>previous example</u>, we have put the **On-line users** web part to the right column. There is a link added by the **Content after** property of the web part, leading to this page. On this page, there will be another **On-line users** web part, which will display all users that are currently on-line.

1. Select the **Members** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *On-line* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site M</u> On-line marketing	Aanager My Community Site 💌	▲ Global Administrator マ v6.0.4237 📑 Sign Out If Enterprise Marketing Solutio
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other		2
Content management Wry Community Site Blogs Group ages Group ages Home* Logon page Media * Members* Search *	View mode Page name: Online Use existing page template Use existing page template Use existing page templates All page templates All page templates Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce Events FAQs Forums General Home pages Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security Membership and security Mews News News News News Press releases Products Templates with editable region	Other Social check arent page template Groups Template Groups Template My Community Site - My Community Site -	ank page with layout Create a blan	k page Search My Community Site - Blog creation My Community Site - Blog creation My Community Site - Forum search
	♥ Wiki	1 2 3 4 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page templa pages in the site.	ate of My Community Site. It will be	used as the starting point for development of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Members On-line
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.MembersOn-line
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- **Template description**: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Members on-line* to the heading Editable text web part's text field. Click **Save**.



5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership** -> **On-line users** web part. Leave all properties of the web part at their default values and click **OK**.

6. The page is now ready. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



3.13.3 Creating the Profile page

On the Profile page, public profiles of users will be displayed based on the wildcard part of the URL. We will set the page's URL to */Members/{UserName}*. This means that if you type *<sitename>/Members/ David.aspx* into the browser, *David* will be recognized as the wildcard part of the URL and David's profile will be displayed by this page.

The profile is displayed using the **User public profile** web part and is based on the **cms.user**. **EditProfileCommunity** alternative form. You can find more information on how to modify the alternative form in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Members** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Profile* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	unity Site 💌 👤 Global Ad	ministrator ▼ v6.0.4237 nl Enterprise M	Sign Out Narketing Solution
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
Content management	View mode Save and create another Page name: Profile Use existing page template All page templates All page templates Blank Blan	Spell check arent page template Creat Template name: Creat Creat Creat Creat Creat Creat Creat	te a blank page with layout	Create a blank page	My Community Site - Blog creation	2
12	۲	1 2 3 4 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page I pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	e starting point for develop	ment of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Members Profile
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MembersProfile
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- **Template description**: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab and enter */Members/{UserName}* into the **Document URL path** field. Click **Save**.

		n-line markeung		
New Delete Move Down Content management	Preview Live site List	Search Other		
My Community Site Page Blogs Groups Files General Group pages URLs Groups Home Logon page Metadata Categorie: Menu Profile Workflow News Search	Design Form Properties Analytic Alias Document alias: Document alias: Document URL pa Path type: Path or pattern: Extended properti URL extensions:	s Profile th th: Sandard URL or wildcard Members/{UserName} es Use custom URL extensions	oute O MVC	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. In the **zoneRight** web part zone, we will want three info boxes - for displaying the user's friends, blogs and groups. Let's start with the first one. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> Friends viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

• Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList

246 Kentico CMS 6.0 Community Site Guide

- No record found text: Currently doesn't have any friends.
- Friend status: Approved
- Selected columns: UserID, UserNickName, UserGender, UserDateOfBirth, UserAvatarID, UserCreated, UserName, AvatarGuid
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: My friends

Click OK.

6. The second info box will be displaying links to the user's blogs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: repeaterBlogs
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- ORDER BY expression: DocumentCreatedWhen DESC
- WHERE condition: NodeOwner = '{%SiteContext.CurrentUser.UserID%}'
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsListRight
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: Currently doesn't have any blogs.
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: My Blogs

Click OK.

7. The third info box will be displaying the groups where the user is a member. Click the **Add web part** (**+**) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsPreviewList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupDisplayName ASC
- WHERE condition: GroupID IN (Select MemberGroupID FROM Community_GroupMember WHERE MemberUserID = '{%SiteContext.CurrentUser.UserID%}' AND MemberStatus = 0)
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: Currently is not member of any group.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Communty Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: My groups

Click OK.

8. In the **zoneCenter** web part zone, the main web part is the **User public profile**. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> User public profile** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Apply visibility settings: enabled
- Use visibility settings from: cms.user.EditProfileCommunity

Click OK.

9. Below the user's profile, there will be two message boards. The first one will be used only by the

owner of the profile. This will be where the user can post announcements for the other users. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Message boards** -> **Message board** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: MessageBoardAnnouncements
- No messages text: There are currently no announcements.
- **Display name**: Anouncements of {%SiteContext.CurrentUser.FullName|(encode)true%}
- Message board owner: User message board
- Access: Only Owner
- Enable subscriptions: enabled
- Board base URL: ~/Members/Profile.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: My announcements

Click OK.

10. Below the first message board, there will be another one. This one will be a public board, which means that anybody can post messages on it. This is where users can leave comments on the user. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneCenter web part zone and choose the Message boards - > Message board web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: MessageBoardComments
- No messages text: There are currently no comments.
- Display name: Comments on {%SiteContext.CurrentUser.FullName|(encode)true%}
- Message board owner: User message board
- Access: Only authenticated users
- Enable subscriptions: enabled
- Board base URL: ~/Members/Profile.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box Light
- Web part container title: Comments on me

Click OK.

11. The page is now ready. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Members/Profile - page template: My Community Site - Members Profile	
 ▼ zoneCenter ▼ editabletext ③ ▼ UserPublicProfile ③ 	✓ zoneRight ✓ logonminiform ✓ ✓ ✓ Shortcuts ✓
There are currently no announcements.	My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out
There are currently no comments.	 FriendsViewer repeaterBlogs Currently doesn't have any blogs
	Currently is not member of any group.

3.13.4 Creating the Members management starter template

Next on in the Members section, we will create a series of five pages that will be used by the users for their accounts management. All the pages will have three web parts common in the **zoneRight** web part zone. These will be info boxes displaying the user's blogs, groups and forum favorites. We will create a starter page template to facilitate the creation of these pages.

1. Select the **Members** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *members management template* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Comm	unity Site 💌 🔺 Global Ad	ministrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🧃	Sign Out
New Delete Avore to Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
Content management Wy Community Site Blogs Group pages Groups Home Home Cogon page Home Pooline Pooline Pooline Pooline News Search	View mode Page name: members management Use existing page template © Use p All page templates All page templates All page templates Blank Blogs E-commerce Events FAQs FAQs FAQs Forums General Home pages Membership and security Membership and security Membership and security News	Other Soell check template Template GroupsTemplate My Community Site - Blog list	te a blank page with layout	Create a blank page	earch I way My Community Site - Blog creation I way My Community Site - Forum search	?
	 Press releases Products Templates with editable region Wiki 	1 2 3 4 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page I pages in the site.	template of My Community	y Site. It will be used as the	e starting point for developm	ient of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: _MembersManagement
- Template code name: MembersManagement
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will place the three info boxes into the **zoneRight** web part zone. The first info box will be displaying links to the user's blogs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: BlogsRepeater
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- ORDER BY expression: DocumentCreatedWhen DESC
- WHERE condition: NodeOwner = {%CurrentUser.UserID%}
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsListRight
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: You currently do not have any blogs.
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: My Blogs

Click OK.

5. The second info box will be displaying the groups where the user is a member. Click the **Add web** part (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsPreviewList
- Show filter: disabled
- **ORDER BY condition**: GroupDisplayName ASC
- WHERE condition:

GroupID IN (Select MemberGroupID FROM Community_GroupMember WHERE MemberUserID =
{%currentuser.userid%} AND MemberStatus = 0)

- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: Currently is not member of any group.
- Web part container: Communty Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: My groups

Click OK.

6. The last info box will be displaying the user's forum favorites. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum favorites** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Forum favorites

Click OK.

7. That's the page template finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

V /Members/members management template - page template: _MembersManagement	
▼ zoneCenter ♣	▼ zoneRight
✓ editabletext	▼ logonminiform 🎡
	▼ Shortcuts
	My profile Edit my profile
	My messages My friends My invitations
	Create a new group
	Sign Out
	▼ BlogsRepeater
	You currently do not have any blogs.
	T Groups Viewer
	Currently is not member of any
	group.
	▼ ForumFavorites
	No favorites found

8. Finally, you can **delete the page** created in this example. We will not need it anymore as the page template is already saved and can be reused.

3.13.5 Creating the Management page

The Management page can be used by site members to manage the details in their public profiles. This functionality is achieved using the **My account** web part, based on the **cms.user**.

EditProfileCommunity alternative form.

1. Select the **Members** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

New Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other
My Community Site	New document	
 Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Members Online Profile News 	lease select new document type: Page (menu item) Article Selog Cell phone Event Sevent (booking system). Article Sevent (booking system). Article Sevent (booking system). Article	

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**MembersManagement** page template created in this chapter. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Management* and click **Save**.
| Kentico
CMS Desk Content My | desk Tools Administration E-commerce | Live Site Manager My Community Site 🔽 🔺 Global Administrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🔮 Sign Out
On-line marketing |
|--|---|--|
| New Deletie Move Down
Content management | Edit Preview Live site List
View mode | Search
Other |
| Blogs Group pages Group pages Groups | Page name: Management Use existing page template Use p | parent page template O Create a blank page with layout O Create a blank page |
| Home Logon page Media Members Online | All page templates Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce | Template name: Search |
| Profile News Search | 에 Events
에 FAQs
이 Forums
에 General
에 Home pages | _GroupsTemplate _MembersManagemer _StarterTemplate My Community Site - Access |
| | Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates | My Community Site - My Community Site - My Community Site - My Community Site - |
| | News Newsletter Offices Press releases Products Templates with editable region Wiki | Blog creation Blog list Blog posts Blogs |
| | | 1 2 3 4 |
| | 4 | _MembersManagement This is the starter template for the Members management section of My Community Site. |

- Template display name: My Community Site Members management
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MembersManagement
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template



4. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will only need to place the **My account** web part to the zoneCenter web part zone and set it up properly. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> My account** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Form name: cms.user.EditProfileCommunity
- Allow user to edit field visibility: enabled
- Display my address: disabled
- Display my orders: disabled
- Display my credit: disabled
- Display my subscriptions: disabled
- Display my messages: disabled
- Display my friends: disabled
- Content before: <div class="myAccMenu">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

5. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *My profile* into the heading Editable text web part's text field. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Forums
My profil	e

6. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

Part 2	255

zoneCenter		Topo Bight
editabletext 🚳		
MyAccount 🖓 Change	nassword Notifications Membershins Categories	▼ logonminiform
myAccount was change	passivera Houncations Hemberships Categories	▼ Shortcuts 🚳
Username:	administrator	My profile
Full name:	Global Administrator	Edit my profile
Email:	administrator@localhost.local	My messages
Display my e-mail to	○ Nobody ○ All	My friends My invitations
Nickname		Create a new group
Weaterie.		Create a new blog
		<u>sign Out</u>
Signature:		
	-	▼ BlogsRepeater
Messaging notification e-ma	il:	You currently do not have a
Time zone:	(none)	blogs.
	Unlead: Browse	- Crowney Viewer (2)
Avatar:	Select pre-defined avatar	• Groupsviewer as
Gender:		Currently is not member of group.
Data of high	RS.	
Pate of Dirth:		
"	UK	▼ ForumFavorites 🤯
		No favorites found

3.13.6 Creating the Invitations page

On the Invitations page, users will see their invitations to groups and will be able to manage them. This functionality will be provided by the **My invitations** and **My sent invitations** web parts. The page is accessible from the **Shortcuts** menu, by clicking the **My invitations** link.

1. Select the **Management** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _MembersManagement** page template created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Invitations* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Invitations
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Invitations
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	desk Tools Administration	E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manaqe</u>	r My Community Site 💌 👤 Global	Administrator 👻 v6.0. 🥼 En
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Liv	ve site List Search le Other			
 ♥ ● My Community Site ● ▶ ● Blogs ● ▶ ● Forums ● ● Group pages ● 	Page Design Form F General	Properties Analytics			
Groups Groups Home Groups Home Groups Home Groups Media Media Members Groups Members	Template > Metadata Categories Menu	_MembersManagement	Save as new page temp Save as new p	Select late - Windows Internet Explorer	
 Management Minagement Mine Profile News Search 	Workflow Versions Related docs	Clone template as ad-hoc Edit template properties	Template display name: Template code name: Template category:	My Community Site - Invitations MyCommunitySite.Invitations My Community Site templates	
	Security Attachments	Inherit content Use page template settings Do not inherit any content Inherit only master page Select inherited levels	Template description:	This is the Invitations page My Community Site.	of A
				ок	Cancel

4. Switch to the Page tab. Enter My invitations into the Editable text web part's text field and click Save



5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add the **My invitations** web part, which will display the user's received invitations. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> My invitations** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Zero rows text: You have currently no invitations.
- Hide control for zero rows: disabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- · Web part container title: Received invitations

Click OK.

6. The second web part on this page will be displaying the user's sent invitations. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> My sent invitations** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: My sent invitations

Click OK.

7. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

V /Members/Management/Invitations - page template: My Community Site - Invitations	
▼ zoneCenter ♣	▼ zoneRight
editabletext 🎡	✓ logonminiform
V MyInvitations and My	▼ Shortcuts
You have currently no invitations.	My profile Edit my profile
▼ MySentInvitations	<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u> <u>Create a new group</u>
	<u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign Out</u>
	✓ BlogsRepeater
	You currently do not have any blogs.
	GroupsViewer G
	▼ ForumFavorites 🎡
	No favorites found

3.13.7 Creating the Messages page

The Messages page will provide users with the functionality of private messaging. The page is accessible from the Shortcuts menu, by clicking the **My messages** link. Its main part is the **My Messages** web part. For more information on the Messaging module, please refer to <u>Kentico CMS</u> <u>Developer's Guide -> Module Messaging</u>.

1. Select the **Management** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _MembersManagement** page template created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Messages* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the Properties -> Template tab and click the Save as new template link. Enter the

following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Messages
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Messages
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *My messages* into the Editable text web part's text field and click **Save**.



5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Here, we will only need to add the **My messages** web part into the **zoneCenter** web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Messaging -> My messages** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, leave all of them at the default values.

6. The page is now finished, in **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

	Part 2	261
--	--------	-----

zoneCenter	✓ zoneRight
editabletext 🎲	
MyMessages 🚳 ontact list Ignore list	
	▼ Shortcuts
Ninew message	My profile
No data found.	<u>Edit my profile</u>
	My messages My friends
	My invitations
	Create a new group
	Sign Out
	PlageDepaster
	Biogskepeater
	You currently do not have a blogs.
	GroupsViewer
	group.
	- Frank Surviva (N
	ForumFavorites with

3.13.8 Creating the Friends page

On the Friends page, users will see an overview of their friends, provided by the **Friends viewer** web part. Users will be able to request new friendships from this page too. There will also be a link to the **Manage friends** page which we will create in the <u>following example</u>. Detailed information on the Friends module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Friends</u>.

1. Select the **Management** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _MembersManagement** page template created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Friends* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Friends
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.Friends
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.



4. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *My friends* into the Editable text web part's text field and click **Save**.



5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Frist, we will add the **Request friendship** web part, which will enable users to request other users' friendship. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> Request friendship** web part. Set only the following property of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

• Link text: Add a friend

Click OK.

6. Below, we will place the **Static text** web part with a link to the **Manage friends** page. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: ManageFriendsLink
- Text:

Manage my friends

Click OK.

7. Finally, we will add the Friends viewer web part, which will display the user's friends. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> Friends viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersList
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: You currently do not have any friends.
- Friend status: Approved

Click OK.

8. The page is finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



3.13.9 Creating the Manage friends page

The Manage friends page, as its name should indicate, will provide users with the friendship management functionality. It is accessible from the **Friends** page created in the <u>previous chapter</u>. The friendship management functionality will be provided by the **My friends** web part.

1. Select the **Management** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _MembersManagement** page template created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Manage friends* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	inity Site 💌 🎩 Global Adı	ministrator ▼ v6.0.4237 	Sign Out Marketing Solution
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other				?
Content management Wy Community Site * Blogs * Group pages * Groups * Home * Logon page * Media * Management * Friends * Invitations * Messages * Online * Profile * News * Search *	View mode Save and create another Page name: Manage friends Use existing page template All page templates Articles Blank Blank Blank Blank Blank FAQS FAQS FAQS FAQS Forums General Home pages Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News News News Press releases Products Templates with editable region Wiki	Other Seell check arent page template Crew Template name: Crew Crew Crew Crew Crew Crew Crew Crew	te a blank page with layout (winge _MembersManagemen winge My Community Site - Blog list	Create a blank page	earch My Community Site - Access My Community Site - Blogs	
	۹ <u>س</u> ۲	1 2 3 4 5 _MembersManage This is the starter temp	e ment ate for the Members manag	gement section of My Com	munity Site.	

- Template display name: My Community Site Manage friends
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.ManageFriends
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	lesk Tools Administratio	on E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manag</u>	er My Community Site 🔽 🖌	L Global Administrator 🔻 V6
New Delete Move Up Content management	Edit Preview View m	Live site List Search			
 Wy Community Site Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Menders Friends Invitations Manage friends Messages Online Profile News Search 	Page Design Form General	Properties Analytics Image: Save Image: Save MembersManagement Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template <th>Save as new page temp Save as new page temp Template display name: Template code name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:</th> <th>Select late - Windows Internet Explorer page template My Community Site - Manage fr My Community Site Itemplates This is the Manage frie of My Community Site.</th> <th>riends nds inds page</th>	Save as new page temp Save as new page temp Template display name: Template code name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	Select late - Windows Internet Explorer page template My Community Site - Manage fr My Community Site Itemplates This is the Manage frie of My Community Site.	riends nds inds page

4. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *Manage my friends* into the Editable text web part's text field and click **Save**.



5. The **zoneCenter** web part zone will host two web parts. The first one of them will be the **Static text** web part with a link leading back to the **Friends** page. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: BackToFriends
- Text:

< Back
to friends

<

Click OK.

6. Now we will add the **My friends** web part used for friends management. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> My friends** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part. Just leave all of them at the default values and click **OK**.

7. The page is finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

gonminiform 🎡
hortcuts 🔯
<u>rrofile</u> my profile
<u>nessages</u> riends nyitations
te a new group
<u>te a new blog</u> <u>Out</u>
logsRepeater 🎡
currently do not have a s.
iroupsViewer 🎡
ently is not member of p.
arumEquaritas

3.14 Creating the Special pages

3.14.1 Creating the Special pages folder

The special pages section consists of pages that do not display any content. Instead, these pages contain special web parts for performing actions like user registration approval, unsubscription from various notifications, acceptation for group invitation, etc.

In the following example, we will create a folder in which the special pages will be stored.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Folder** document type.



2. Enter Special pages into the **Document name** filed and click **Save**.

M Kentico	Live Site
CMS Desk Content My d	desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search View mode Other
My Community Site	Spell check
🦉 Files	Decument name: Special pages
Group pages	Document name. Special pages
Groups Home	
Logon page®	
Members•	

3. The folder has been created and the special pages can now be placed under it.



3.14.2 Creating the Access denied page

The first special page will be the Access denied page. This is where users with insufficient permissions will be redirected after accessing some secured page. The page will contain only an **Editable text** web part which will display the access denied message.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Kentico CMS Desk Content	Li My desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Content management	vn Edit Preview Live site List Search View mode Other
 My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Members News Search Special pages 	New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) File Folder Link an existing document

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Access denied* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	inity Site 💌 💄 Global Ad	ministrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🛛 🍪	Sign Out
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other				?
Content management Wy Community Site* Blogs* Group ages* Group ages* Home* Logon page* Media* Members* Search* Special pages*	View mode Save Save and create another Page name: Access denied Use existing page template Use p All page templates All page templates All page templates All page templates Commerce Events FAQs Forums General Home pages Job openings Knowledge base Membership and security Mewsigner News News News Community Site templates News News News Community Site templates News News News News Community Site templates Community Site templat	Cher Seel check arent page template Creation Creat	te a blank page with layout ()	Create a blank page	earch My Community Site - Access My Community Site - Blogs	
	 Templates with editable region Wiki 	1 2 3 4 5 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	e starting point for developme	ent of many

- Template display name: My Community Site Access Denied
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.AccessDenied
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template



4. Click **Edit template properties** and change the **Inherit content** property to **Select inherited levels**, while only **Level0** should be selected. Click **Save** to save the changes.

 Page template Page templates My Compared 	e properties Community Site - Access Denied	?
> Page templates > My Co	Community Site - Access Denied	
	s Scones Lavout Theme Webnarts Header Documents	
General Design Sites	s scopes eavour meme wes parts meader bocaments	
Save		
Template display name: M	My Community Site - Access Denied	
Template code name: N	MyCommunitySite.AccessDenied	
Category: N	My Community Site templates	
T M	This is the Access denied page of 🔺 My Community Site.	
Template description:		
	Ψ.	
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse	
Template type:	Portal page	
Master template:		
Inherit content:	💿 Inherit all	
(Do not inherit any content	
	Inherit only master page	
	Select inherited levels	
	Level3	
	Level4	_
	···· Level5	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will only need to add the **Editable text** web part into the **zoneCenter** web part zone, below the **Editable text** web part for heading. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

In **Design** tab, the page should now look as in the following screenshot.

▼ /Special pages/Access denied - page template: My Community Site - Access Denied	
▼ zoneCenter	▼ zoneRight
 editabletext editabletext iiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiii	▼ logonminiform
	▼ Shortcuts 🚳
	My profile Edit my profile
	<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> My invitations
	Create a new group
	Sign Out

6. Switch to the **Page** tab. You can see two editable text regions on the page now - one for heading and one for the warning text. Enter the following texts into the text areas:

- Heading: Access denied
- Warning text: You're not allowed to access the required page. Please contact the administrator if you think you should be allowed to access it.

Click Save.



7. The page is complete. If you view it in **Live site** mode, you should see the page as in the following screenshot. Please note that the Logon mini form is displayed only to unauthenticated users.



3.14.3 Creating the Blog unsubscribe page

The Blog unsubscribe page will be used to handle blog post unsubscription requests. Users are able to subscribe to receiving notifications about new blog comments on a particular blog post. Notification e-mails contain an unsubscription link leading to this page with the subscription GUID in the query string parameter. By clicking this link, users can unsubscribe from receiving the notifications. The unsubscription request is handled by the **Blog post unsubscription** web part on this page.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its URL in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Content -> Blogs -> Blog unsubscription URL**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	<u>Liv</u> desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search
My Community Site	New document
 Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Members News Search 	Please select new document type:
Special pages Access denied	

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Blog unsubscribe* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My (desk Tools Administration E-commerce (<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	nity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🧕 Sign fl Enterprise Marketing So	a Out olution
New Delete Avore Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
Content management Image: State of the	View mode Save and create another Page name: Blog unsubscribe Use existing page template All page template All page templates All page templ	Seell check arent page template Cre Template name:	ale a blank page with layout (Create a blank page	earch In Impr aaa	?
	 Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News Offices Press releases Products Templates with editable region Wiki 	1 2 3 4 5	My Community Site - Access Denied	Site. It will be used as the	My Community Site - Blog list	iany

- Template display name: My Community Site Blog unsubscribe
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BlogUnsubscribe
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- **Template description**: some text describing the page template

New Delete Move Down	desk Tools Administrat	tion E-commerce On-line marketing Live site List Search mode Other	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manaqe</u>	r My Community Site 💌 🤳	L Global Administrator ▼ V6.0
 Wy Community Site* Blogs* Files* Forums* Group page* Home* Logon page* Media* Members* News* Search* Special page* Access denied* Blog unsubscribe* 	Page Design Form General URLs Template > Metadata Categories Menu Workflow Versions Related docs Linked docs Security Attachments	Properties Analytics Properties Analytics Image: Save Image: Save StarterTemplate Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Save as new template as ad-hoc Image: Sav	Save as new page templ Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	Select ate - Windows Internet Explorer age template My Community Site - Blog unsub My Community Site Englates This is the Blog unsub of My Community Site.	subscribe scribe scribe page

4. Click **Edit template properties** and change the **Inherit content** property to **Select inherited levels**, while only **Level0** should be selected. Click **Save** to save the changes.

Page template propert	ties - Windows Internet Explorer	- O X
🧧 Page templat	te properties	?
> Page templates > My	/ Community Site - Blog unsubscribe	
General Design Sit	res Scones Lavout Theme Web parts Header Documents	
Save		
_		
Template display name:	My Community Site - Blog unsubscribe	
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite.BlogUnsubscribe	
Category:	My Community Site templates	
	This is the Blog unsubscribe page _ of My Community Site.	
Template description:		
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse	_
		=
Template type:	Portal page	
Master template:		
Inherit content:	Inherit all	
	Do not inherit any content	
	Select inherited levels	
	····· 🔽 Level0	
	Level1	
	Level2	
	Level4	
	Level5	
	Level6	
L		•

5. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Blog unsubscribe* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.



6. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Blogs** -> **Blog post unsubscription** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Confirmation text: You have been successfully unsubscribed.
- Content before: <h3>
- Content after: </h3>

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the unsubscription requests.

~	/Special pages/Blog unsubscribe - page template: My Community Site - Blog unsubscribe	
	 zoneCenter editabletext ibe ■ BlogPostUnsubscription	zoneRight Jogonminiform Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog
		<u>Diqii Out</u>

Part 2

279

3.14.4 Creating the Board unsubscribe page

This page will be used to handle message board unsubscription requests. There are several message boards throughout the whole site. Users can subscribe to receiving e-mail notifications about new messages on a particular board. The notification e-mails contain an unsubscription link leading to this page. When a user clicks it, they are redirected to this page with the subscription GUID in query string parameter. On the page, the **Message board unsubscription** web part will handle the request and perform unsubscription.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its URL in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Community -> Message boards -> Board unsubscription URL**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My of	<u>Live</u> Jesk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search View mode Other
 My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Members News Search Special pages Access denied Blog unsubscribe 	New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) File Folder Link an existing document

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Board unsubscribe* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	inity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator ▼ v6.0.4237 	Sign Out Marketing Solution
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other				?
Content management	Vew mode Vew mode Save and create another Page name: Board unsubscribe Use existing page template Use existing page template Use existing page template Use existing page templates Articles Blank Blogs E-commerce Events FAQs Forums General Home pages Images Master templates Master templates Master templates Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates News News News News News Press releases Products Templates with editable regior Wiki	Spell chack arent page template Template name: GroupsTemplate GroupsTemplate My Community Site - Access	ate a blank page with layout (Create a blank page	earch aaa aaa My Community Site - Biog list	
12	< >	1 2 3 4 5 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	e starting point for develop	pment of many

- Template display name: My Community Site Board unsubscribe
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BoardUnsubscribe
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administra	ation E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manaqe</u> I	er My Community Site 🔽 👤 Gl	obal Administrator 🔻 V6. 1 E
Kentico Content My New Ocener Up Delete Move Down Content management Content management My Community Site* Blogs* Files* Forums* Group pages* Home* Logon page* Media* Members* News*	desk Tools Administra Edit Preview View Page Design Form General URLs Template Categories Menu	ation E-commerce On-line marketing Very site List Search other m Properties Analytics Template StarterTemplate StarterTemplate Very site Save as new template Very inherit template	Save as new page temp Save as new page temp	Select late - Windows Internet Explorer bage template	.d E
 Search * Special pages * Access denied * Blog unsubscribe * Board unsubscribe * 	Workflow Versions Related docs Linked docs Security Attachments	Cione template as ad-hoc Edit template properties Inherit content Use page template settings Do not inherit any content Inherit only master page Select inherited levels	Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	My Community Site - Board unsub MyCommunitySite BoardUnsubsc My Community Site templates This is the Board unsubsc page of My Community Site	ribe ribe ribe · Cancel

4. Click **Edit template properties** and change the **Inherit content** property to **Select inherited levels**, while only **Level0** should be selected. Click **Save** to save the changes.

Page template propert	ies - Windows Internet Explorer	
🧧 Page templat	e properties	?
> Page templates > My	Community Site - Board unsubscribe	
General Design Sit	es Scones Lavout Theme Webnarts Header Documents	
Save		
_		
Template display name:	My Community Site - Board unsubscribe	
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite.BoardUnsubscribe	
Category:	My Community Site templates	
	This is the Board unsubscribe A page of My Community Site.	
Template description:		
	v	
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse	E
i emplate type:	Portai page	
Master template:		
Inherit content:	Inherit all	
	Do not inherit any content Inherit only master page	
	Select inherited levels	
	····· 🔽 Level0	
	Level2	
	Level4	
	Level5	
	Level7	-

5. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Blog unsubscribe* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.



6. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Message board -> Message board unsubscription** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Confirmation text: You have been successfully unsubscribed.
- Content before: <h3>
- Content after: </h3>

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the unsubscription requests.

✓ /Special pages/Board unsubscribe	- page template: My Community Site - Board unsubscribe	De la companya de la
▼ zoneCenter		-
ribe		▼ logonminiform 🍪
▼ MessageBoardUnsubscription 🎡		▼ Shortcuts 🍛
		<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
		My messages My friends My invitations
		Create a new group
		Create a new blog Sign Out
▼ MessageBoardUnsubscription		Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My rivitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out

Part 2

283

3.14.5 Creating the Forum unsubscribe page

The last of the unsubscription pages is the Forum unsubscribe page. In the Forums section, users have the possibility to subscribe to receiving notification e-mails about new posts in a particular forum thread. The notification e-mails contain unsubscription links leading to this page. The GUID of the subscription is contained in the querystring parameter. The main part of this page is the **Forum unsubscription** web part. When a user clicks the unsubscription link, they are redirected to this page where the web part handles the unsubscription request.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its URL in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Community -> Forum unsubscription URL**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	<u>Live</u> lesk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search View mode Other
 My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Mombers 	New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) File Folder
 News Search Special pages Access denied Blog unsubscribe Board unsubscribe 	Link an existing document

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Forum unsubscribe* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manager</u> On-line marketing	My Community Site 💌 🏼 单 Global Admin	nistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 📑 Sign Out
New Delete Annual Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List	Search Other		?
Content management Wy Community Site Image: State	View mode Save and create another Page name: Forum unsubscribe Use existing page template All page templates All page tem	Other Solid Check Template name: GroupsTemplate My Community Site - My Community Site -	th layout Create a blank page Sea Inagemer Sty Site - nied - My Community Site - Blog creation	reh aaa www. My Community Site - Blog list
	<	1 2 3 4 5 StarterTemplate This is the starter page template of My C pages in the site.	Community Site. It will be used as the s	tarting point for development of many

- Template display name: My Community Site Forum unsubscribe
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.ForumUnsubscribe
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template



4. Click **Edit template properties** and change the **Inherit content** property to **Select inherited levels**, while only **Level0** should be selected. Click **Save** to save the changes.

🦉 Page template propert	ies - Windows Internet Explorer			
🧧 Page templat	Page template properties			
> Page templates > My	Community Site - Forum unsubscribe			
General Design Sit	es Scopes Lavout Theme Webparts Header	Documents		
Save		Π		
_				
Template display name:	My Community Site - Forum unsubscribe			
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite.ForumUnsubscribe			
Category:	My Community Site templates			
	This is the Forum unsubscribe A page of My Community Site.			
Template description:				
	Ψ			
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse	=		
Template type:	Portal page			
Master template:				
Innerit content:	 Inherit all Do not inherit any content 			
	Inherit only master page			
	Select inherited levels			
	Level3			
	····· Level4			
	Level6			
	Level7	-		

5. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Forum unsubscribe* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.



6. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum unsubscription** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Content before: <h3>
- Content after: </h3>

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the unsubscription requests.

V /Special pages/Forum unsubscribe - page template: My Community Site - Forum unsubscribe	2
▼ zoneCenter 📫	▼ zoneRight ♣
editabletext Scribe	▼ logonminiform 🎡
ForumUnsubscription	▼ Shortcuts @
	<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
	My messages My friends My invitations
	Create a new group
	Create a new blog
	Sign Out

Part 2

287

3.14.6 Creating the Friend management page

One of the community features in Kentico CMS is the Friends module. It provides users the possibility of creating social relations - friendships. This special page will contain the **Friendship management** web part, which handles the friendship approval or rejection requests.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its alias path in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Community -> Friend management path**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My d	Live Site desk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search View mode Other
 My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Members 	New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) File Solder
 News Search Special pages Access denied Blog unsubscribe Board unsubscribe Forum unsubscribe 	Link an existing document

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Friend management* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My of	lesk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	nity Site 💌 🎩 Global Adn	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🔹 👔	Sign Out
New Delete Avore Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
Content management Content management Content management Blogs Blogs Group pages Group pages Home Cogon page Media * Media * Members Search Search Coses denied Blog unsubscribe Blog unsubscribe Forum unsubscribe	View mode Save mode Save and create another Page name: Friend management Use existing page template Use existing page template All page templates All page templates Frides Blank Blank Blank E-commerce Events FAQs Forums General Home pages Images Do openings Knowledge base Master templates Master templates Master templates Master templates News News News Newsletter Offices Press releases Products Templates with editable region	Spell check arent page template Creat Cre	e a blank page with layout (Create a blank page	sarch aaa aaa My Community Site - Blog list	
	Viki	1 2 3 4 5 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page t pages in the site.	emplate of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	starting point for developmen	t of many

- Template display name: My Community Site Friend management
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.FriendManagement
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template
| Kentico
CMS Desk Content My of | desk Tools Administrati | ion E-commerce On-line marketing | <u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manag</u> | er My Community Site 💌 | L Global Administrator ▼ | v6.0.4237 |
|---|---|-------------------------------------|--|---|---------------------------------|-----------|
| Image: New Image: Delete Image: | Edit Preview
View r | Live site List Search
node Other | | | | |
| Wy Community Site* Blogs* Forums* Group page* Home* Logon page* Media* Members* News* Search* Search* Search* Blog unsubscribe* Board unsubscribe* Forum unsubscribe* Friend management* | Page Design Form General URLs Template > Metadata Categories Menu Workflow Versions Related docs Linked docs Security Attachments Attachments | Properties Analytics | Save as new page temp
Save as new page temp
Save as new I
Template display name:
Template code name:
Template code name:
Template description: | Select
blate - Windows Internet Explorer
page template
My Community Site - Friend Mar
My Community Site templates
This is the Friends mu
page of My Community S | management
nagement
Site. | |

4. Click **Edit template properties** and change the **Inherit content** property to **Select inherited levels**, while only **Level0** should be selected. Click **Save** to save the changes.

🦉 Page template propert	rties - Windows Internet Explorer	- 0 X
🧧 Page templat	ite properties	?
> Page templates > My	y Community Site - Friend management	
General Design Sit	ites Scopes Layout Theme Webparts Header Documents	
		*
Save		
Template display name:	: My Community Site - Friend management	
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite.FriendManagement	
Category:	My Community Site templates	
	page of My Community Site.	
Template description:		
	T	
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse	=
Template type:	Portal page	
Master template:		
Inherit content:	Inherit all	
	Do not inherit any content	
	Inherit only master page Select inherited levels	
	Level1	
	Level5	
	···· Level6	
L		+

5. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Friend management* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.



6. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> Friendship management** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- My friends page path: /Members/Management/Friends
- Send notification message: enabled
- Send notification e-mail: enabled
- Content after:

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the friendship management requests.

/Special pages/Friend management - page template: My Community Site - Friend management	Þ
zoneCenter editabletext @jement FriendshipManagement @	zoneRight logonminiform Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out

291

Part 2

3.14.7 Creating the Invitation acceptation page

This special page is related to Kentico CMS Groups module. Members of a group can send e-mail invitations to join the group. In the e-mail, there is a link leading to this page with the invitation GUID in query string parameter. When a user clicks the link, they will be redirected to this page where the **Group invitation** web part handles the invitation and makes the user a member of the group.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its alias path in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Community -> Invitation acceptation path**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Kentico	<u>Live Site</u>
CMS Desk Content My d	Jesk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Delete Move Down	Edit Preview Live site List Search
Content management	View mode Other
 My Community Site Blogs Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Members 	Please select new document type:
 News Search Special pages Access denied Blog unsubscribe Board unsubscribe Forum unsubscribe Friend management 	S Link an existing document

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Invitation acceptation* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	inity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ministrator ▼ v6.0.4237 // Enterprise	Sign Out Marketing Solution
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
Content management Wy Community Site Bilogs Forums Group pages Group page Home* Logon page Media* Members* News* Access denied* Blog unubscribe* Forum unsubscribe* Forum unsubscribe* Friend management*	View mode Save and create another Page name: Invitation acceptation Use existing page template All page templates All pag	Other Spell check arent page template Cre Template name: Cre CroupsTemplate My Community Site - Access	ate a blank page with layout (Create a blank page	earch aaa awa My Community Site -	
	<)	1 2 3 4 5 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	e starting point for develo	pment of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Invitation acceptation
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.InvitationAcceptation
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administra	ation E-commerce On-line marketin	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manag</u> g	er My Community Site 💌	보 Global Administrator 🔻	v6.0.4237 d Enterpri
New Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview View	Live site List Search mode Other				
 Wy Community Site Blogs Files Forums Groups Home Logon page Media Members Search Special pages Access denied Blog unsubscribe Forum unsubscribe Friend management Invitation acceptation 	Page Design Form General	n Properties Analytics Template StarterTemplate StarterTempla	Save as new page temp Save as new page temp Save as new page Template display name: Template code name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	Select Plate - Windows Internet Explorer page template My Community Site - Invitation My Community Site templates This is the Invitation acceptation of My Comm	n acceptation cceptation anunity Site.	

4. Click **Edit template properties** and change the **Inherit content** property to **Select inherited levels**, while only **Level0** should be selected. Click **Save** to save the changes.

🤗 Page template propert	ties - Windows Internet Explorer	- 0 X
Page templat	te properties	?
> Page templates > My	Community Site - Invitation acceptation	
General Design Sit	rae Sconas Lavout Thama Wahnarts Haadar Documents	
Save		
Template display name:	My Community Site - Invitation acceptation	
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite.InvitationAcceptation	
Category:	My Community Site templates	
	This is the Invitation acceptation of My Community Site.	
Template description:		
	Ŧ	
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse	_
		=
Template type:	Portal page	
Master template:		
Inherit content:	Inherit all	
	Do not inherit any content	
	Select inherited levels	
	Level0	
	En Level1	
	Level2	
	Levels	
	Level5	
		-

5. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Invitation acceptation* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.



6. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group invitation** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Content before: <h3>
- Content after: </h3>

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the invitations.

· (Precis) according according according according to the Community Site Invitation according	
 /Special pages/Invitation acceptation - page template: My Community Site - Invitation acceptation zoneCenter editabletext eptation GroupInvitation @ 	zoneRight Jogonminiform Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sign Out

Part 2

295

3.14.8 Creating the Registration approval page

After registration to the page, users don't become members immediately. Instead, an e-mail is sent to them with the registration approval link. The link is leading to this page and contains the registration GUID in query string parameter. When the user clicks this link, the **Registration e-mail confirmation** web part on this page handles the registration approval request and the user becomes a member.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its URL into **E-mail confirmation page** property of the **Custom registration form** web part, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My of	<u>Live Site</u> Jesk Tools Administration E-commerce On-line marketing
New Copy 1 Up Delete Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List Search View mode Other
 My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Members News Search Special pages Access denied Blog unsubscribe Board unsubscribe Forum unsubscribe Friend management Invitation acceptation 	New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) File Folder Ink an existing document

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Registration approval* and click **Save**.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My	desk Tools Administration E-commerce	<u>Live Site</u> On-line marketing	Site Manager My Commu	inity Site 💌 👤 Global Adr	ninistrator 🔻 v6.0.4237 🧕 🧐 🚮 Enterprise Ma	Sign Out
New Delete A Move Down Content management	Edit Preview Live site List View mode	Search Other				?
Content management Wy Community Site Image: State	View mode Save and create another Page name: Registration approval Use existing page template Use p All page templates All page templates Al	Other Seell check arent page template Template name: GroupsTemplate My Community Site - Access	te a blank page with layout (Create a blank page	earch aaa w mage aaa My Community Site - Blog list	Second
	< >	1 2 3 4 5 6 _StarterTemplate This is the starter page pages in the site.	template of My Community	Site. It will be used as the	starting point for developm	ent of many

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Registration approval
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Registration approval
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

Kentico CMS Desk Content My o	lesk Tools Administrat	tion E-commerce On-line marketing	<u>Live Site</u> <u>Site Manaq</u> g	er My Community Site 💌 🤈	L Global Administrator ▼ v6.	.0.4237 Enterpr
New Delete Move Up Content management	Edit Preview View	Live site List Search mode Other				
 My Community Site Blogs Forums Group pages Groups Home Logon page Media Members News Search Special pages Blog unsubscribe Blog unsubscribe Forum unsubscribe Friend management Invitation acceptation Registration approval 	Page Design Form General	Properties Analytics Image: Save Save StarterTemplate Image: Save as new template. Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template Image: Save as new template	Save as new page temp Save as new page temp Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	Select page template My Community Site - Registration My Community Site Registration My Community Site templates This is the Registration of My Community Site.	ion approval approval 2n approval	

4. Click Edit template properties and change the Inherit content property to Select inherited levels , while only Level0 should be selected. Click Save to save the changes.

Page template proper	rties - Windows Internet Explorer	
🧧 Page templat	te properties	?
> Page templates > My	y Community Site - Registration approval	
General Design Sit	ites Scopes Layout Theme Webparts Header Documents	
Save		
Template display name:	: My Community Site - Registration approval	
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite.Registrationapproval	
Category:	My Community Site templates	
	This is the Registration approval 🔺	
Tourslate descriptions		
remplate description:		
Thumhnailt	Unlead:	
indinonali.	Diowse	=
Template type:	Portal page	
Master template:		
Inherit content:	Inherit all	
	Do not inherit any content	
	Inherit only master page	
(Select inherited levels	
, c	····· 🗹 Level0	
	Level4	
	Level5	
	Level6	
	Level/	

5. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Registration approval* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.



6. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership** -> **Registration e-mail confirmation** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- From address: no-reply@mycommunitysite.com
- Administrator e-mail: admin@mycommunitysite.com
- Notify administrator: enabled
- Successful approval text: Your user account is now active. You can sign in using your user name and password. Click here to continue
- Unsuccessful approval text: Your registration wasn't approved.
- User deleted text: The user account has been already deleted.

• Content after:

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the registration approval requests.



3.15 Ordering pages in the content tree

Once all the pages are created, it is a good idea to give them a logical organization in the content tree. Use the Up and Down buttons to move pages to achieve the same page order as in the screenshot below.

*	Kentico CMS Desk Content My o
New	Image: Copy Delete Image: Copy Delete Image: Copy Down Content management Image: Copy Down
≂ 🕑 M	y Community Site 🎴
	Home®
Þ 📄	Blogs
	News 📍
	Media 🎴
Þ 📄	Forums
Þ 📄	Groups
	Group pages®
Þ 📄	Members®
D 🕤	Files
Þ 🔄	Special pages®
	Logon page®
	Search •

3.16 Making the settings

To get the site working, you also have to make several settings in the **Site manager -> Settings** section.

1. First, select the name of your site from the Site drop-down list in the top left corner of the page.

Kentico							CMS Desk	User: 1 Global Admin	istrator ▼ v6.0.4233	Sign Out		
Sites Ac	Content	Development Tool	s Da	ishboard	Licenses	Support	Buy					
My Community Site												
 Settings 	Reset th	ese settings to default										
D 🕘 Content												
E URLs and SEO	Web site content											
Security & Membership	Default alloc anth		A				Release					
Distance of the second	Default allas path			ome			Select		Inherit from global setti	ngs		
> 🏹 E-commerce												
D Sa Community	Page not found	Page not found										
Intranet & Collaboration Versioning & synchronization	Page not found for non-	published documents	2						Inherit from global setti	nas		
Integration	Deer est (such UD)	~										
Cloud services	Page not found URL		U					V	Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Log page not found exc	eption	2					\checkmark	Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Multilingual											
	Default content culture Combine with default culture		😮 En	iglish - Unite	d States		Ţ		Inherit from global setti	ngs		
		Iture	0						Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Combine files with defau	It culture	2					V	Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Metadata											
	Page key words prefix		0						Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Page description prefix		2						Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Page title format		? {%	prefix%} - {	%pagetitle	_orelse_na	me%}	V	Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Page title prefix		🕜 My	/ site					Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Control element		o div	1			Ţ		Inherit from global setti	ngs		
	Export these settings											

2. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Content, make the following settings. Remember that you need to uncheck the Inherit from global settings check-box in order to be able to enter values into the fields.

- Default alias path: /Home
- Default culture of the content: English United States
- Page title prefix: My Community Site
- Exclude documents from search: /Special-Pages/%

Click Save.

3. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Security & Membership, make the following settings:

- Check page permissions: No page
- Website logon page URL: ~/Logon.aspx

Click Save.

- 4. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Content -> Blogs, set the following value:
- Blog unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Blog-Unsubscription.aspx

Click Save.

- 5. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Community, enter the following values:
- Group security access denied path: /Groups/{GroupName}/Access

- Group management path: /Groups/{GroupName}/Management
- Group profile path: /Groups/{GroupName}
- Member management path: /Members/Management
- Member profile path: /Members/{UserName}
- Invitation acceptation path: /Special-Pages/Invitation-Acceptation
- Friend management path: /Special-Pages/Friend-Management

Click Save.

- 6. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Community -> Forums, enter the following values:
- Forum unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Forum-Unsubscribe.aspx
- Forum base URL: ~/Forums.aspx

Click Save.

- 7. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Community -> Message boards, adjust the following property:
- Board unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Board-Unsubscribe.aspx

Click Save.

8. The settings are done. The whole website should now be fully functional.

Index

- B -

Blogs functionality 63 Blogs section Blog list page 163 Blog posts page 167 Blogs page 150 Create page 159 Media page 174 News page 170

- D -

Design and styles changing the header image 80 modifying the stylesheet 83

- F -

Forums functionality 55 structure modification 57 Forums section Forums page 177 Forums search page 182

- G -

Getting started first sight 14 installation 9 Groups functionality 37 group pages template modification 52 new group 42 public profile modification 48 Groups section Access page 196 Create page 189 Forums page 220 Group pages title page 234

Groups page 185 groups starter template 199 Management page 192 Media list page 212 Media page 216 Members page 208 Pages page 228 Profile page 202 Template page 224

- H -

Home page 136

- | -

Introduction about this guide 6 comunity features 6 creating the site from scratch 88

- L -

Logon page 130

- M -

Making site settings for Part 2 299 Master page 117 Media libraries creating custom library 68 functionality 66 publishing global media library 73 Members section Friends page 261 255 Invitations page Manage friends page 264 Management page 251 Members management starter template 248 Members page 236 Messages page 258 Online page 240 Profile page 243

Index	303

- 0 -

Ordering pages 299

- P -

Pre-development assigning the CSS stylesheet 96 91 creating the site 99 defining web part containers News notification template 109 page templates category 98 sammple medial library 111 sample poll 104 tag groups 107 uploading images 102

- S -

Search page 125 Special pages Access denied page 270 Blog unsubscribe page 275 Board unsubscribe page 279 Forum unsubscribe page 283 Friend management page 287 Invitation acceptation page 291 Registration approval page 295 Special pages folder 268 starter page template 145

- U -

User registration functionality 15 public profile visibility 27 registration approval 32 registration form modification 19 user profiles modification 23 Windows Live ID overview 35 Windows Live ID sign button 36